

Techqua Ikachi

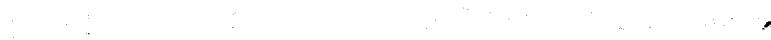
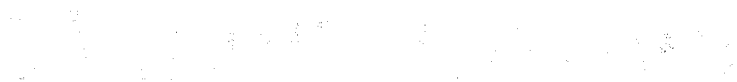
Messages from the Guardians of Land and Life



**The Sacred Teachings of Native Cultures
have been given to **us** on the condition
that they NEVER be sold.**

To do **so would be like selling someone else's Mother.**

**Feel free to copy and distribute this document
to as many people **as** you wish.
Please include this page. Thank You.**



Hopi and other Native and non-Native Prophecies

Table of Contents

Hopi statement at the United Nations in December 1992	2
The Hopi Life Plan Petroglyph	5
Messages from the UN Cry of the Earth Conference, November 22, 1993	7
Statement by Martin Gashweseoma, Hopi, given at the Cry of the Earth conference	11
Statement by Manuel Hoyungowa, Hopi, at the Cry of the Earth conference	13
Statement by William Commanda, Algonquin, at the UN Cry of the Earth Conference	16
Statement by Leon Shenandoah, Iroquois Confederacy, at the UN, 1985	18
The <i>Hopi Story</i> by Hopi Elder Dan Katchongva	19
Excerpt from <i>The Book of the Hopi</i>	28
Excerpts from the Hopi Newsletter <i>Techqua Ikachi</i>	29
Statement by the Keeper of the Hopi Fire Clan Tablets at Santa Fe in 1990	33
Statement by Hopi Spiritual Leaders on August 7, 1994	38
Recant Hopi History: Preface to Hopi Elder Dan Evehema's Message To Mankind	39
Hopi Elder Dan Evehema's Message To Mankind	42
Letter to President Nixon protesting the Strip-mining of Black Mesa	45
Transcript of Hopi Elders on Art Bell Talk, June 16, 1998	46
Statement by Martin Gashweseoma in Maniwaki, Quebec November 29, 1998	56
The Essence of Hopi Prophecy	60
Singing the Hopi Song of Purification	62
Birth of the White Buffalo Calf	64
The Story of the White Buffalo Calf Woman	67
Jewish Prophecy : The birth of the Red Heifer	68
Native Prophecies by Lee Brown, Cherokee	70
Tuscarora Prophecy by Mad Bear	75
The Seven Fires Prophecy of the Algonquin	77
Prophecies of the Q'ero Incan Shamans	80
Message of Our Lady of Fatima	82
Mother Shipton's Prophecy	84
The Visions of Dannion Brinkley	87
Edgar Cayce	91
Other Prophecies	113
Traditional Dineh (Navajo) View of the "Hopi/Navajo Dispute"	115
Sources of Additional Information	119

Hopi statement at the United Nations in December 1992

In December 1992, at ceremonies marking the beginning of the “Year of Indigenous Peoples”, representatives from several First Nations spoke to the United Nations General Assembly. Thomas Banyacya and Caroline Tawangyouma represented the Hopi. (Much-loved Grandfather Banyacya passed to Spirit on February 6, 1999.)

The program for the historic meeting at the UN was:

Speakers: Sister Blaise Lupo, co-director, Clergy and Laity Concerned (CALC); Pir Vilayat Inayat Khan, Head of the Sufi Order of Islamic Tradition; Reverend Ambrose I. Lane, Minister and founder, Martin Luther King Jr. Community Church of the USA.

Prayer: Wallace Black Elk, Lakota Nation

Speakers: Native American Indigenous Medicine Council, Chief Leon Shenandoah, Haudenosaunee (Six Nations Iroquois Confederacy); Caroline Tawangyouma, Sovereign Hopi Independent Nation, Hotevilla Village; Thomas Banyacya, United Sovereign Hopi Independent Nation; Pandit Gopi Krishna, Yoga Adept.

Closing comments: Javier Perez de Cuellar, Secretary General of the UN, represented by Robert Muller, Assistant Secretary General of the UN.

Here is the text of the historic statement given by Grandfather Banyacya:

THE HOPI MESSAGE TO THE UNITED NATIONS GENERAL ASSEMBLY

Thomas Banyacya, Kykotsmovi, Arizona

The presentation by Mr. Thomas Banyacya, the final speaker, was preceded by three shouts by Oren Lyons, Faithkeeper of the Six Nations, and first speaker of the day. The shouts were a spiritual announcement to the Great Spirit of the people assembled and the intention to give a message of spiritual importance. Thomas then sprinkled corn meal next to the podium of the General Assembly and made a brief remark in Hopi that translates as follows:

Hopi Spiritual leaders had an ancient prophecy that some day world leaders would gather in a Great House of Mica with rules and regulations to solve the world problems without war. I am amazed to see the prophecy has come true and you are here today! But only a handful of United Nations Delegates are present to hear the Motee Smom (Hopi for First People) from around the world who spoke here today.

My name is Banyacya of the Wolf, Fox and Coyote Clan and I am a member of the Hopi sovereign nation. Hopi in our language means a peaceful, kind, gentle, truthful people. The Traditional Hopi follows the spiritual path that was given to us by Massau'u the Great Spirit. We

made a sacred covenant to follow his life plan at all times, which includes the responsibility of taking care of this land and life for his divine purpose. We have never made treaties with any foreign nation, including the United States, but for many centuries we have honored this sacred agreement. Our goals are not to gain political control, monetary wealth nor military power, but rather to pray and to promote the welfare of all living beings and to preserve the world in a natural way. We still have our ancient sacred stone tablets and spiritual religious societies which are the foundations of the Hopi way of life. Our history says our white brother should have retained those same sacred objects and spiritual foundations.

In 1948, all Traditional Hopi spiritual leaders met and spoke of things I felt strongly were of great importance to all people. They selected four interpreters to carry their message of which I am the only one still living today. At the time, I was given a sacred prayer feather by the spiritual leaders. I made a commitment to carry the Hopi message of peace and deliver warnings from prophecies known since the time the previous world was destroyed by flood and our ancestors came to this land.

My mission was to open the doors of this Great House of Mica to native peoples. The Elders said to knock four times and this commitment was fulfilled when I delivered a letter and the sacred prayer feather I had

been given to John Washburn in the Secretary General's office in October, 1991. I am bringing part of the Hopi message to you here today. We have only ten minutes to speak and time is late so I am making my statement short.

At the meeting in 1948, Hopi leaders 80, 90 and even 100 years old explained that the Creator made the first world in perfect balance where humans spoke one language, but humans turned away from moral and spiritual principles. They misused their spiritual powers for selfish purposes. They did not follow nature's rules. Eventually the world was destroyed by sinking of land and separation of land by what you would call major earthquakes. Many died and only a small handful survived.

Then this handful of peaceful people came into the second world. They repeated their mistakes and the world was destroyed by freezing which you call the great Ice Age.

The few survivors entered the third world. That world lasted a long time and as in previous worlds, the people spoke one language. The people invented many machines and conveniences of high technology, some of which have not yet been seen in this age. They even had spiritual powers that they used for good. They gradually turned away from natural laws and pursued only material things and finally only gambled while they ridiculed spiritual principles. No one stopped them from this course and the world was destroyed by the great flood that many nations still recall in their ancient history or in their religions.

The Elders said again only a small groups escaped and came to this fourth world where we now live. Our world is in terrible shape again even though the Great Spirit gave us different languages and sent us to four comers of the world and told us to take care of the Earth and all that is in it.

This Hopi ceremonial rattle represents Mother Earth. The line running around it is a time line and indicates that we are in the final days of the prophecy. What have you, as individuals, as nations and as the world body been doing to take care of this Earth? In the Earth today, humans poison their own food, water and air with pollution. Many of us, including children, are left to starve. Many wars are still being fought. Greed and concern for material things is a common disease. In this western hemisphere, our homeland, many original native people are landless, homeless, starving and have no medical help.

The Hopi knew humans would develop many powerful technologies that would be abused. In this century, we have seen the First World War and the Second World War in which the predicted gourd of ashes, which you call the atomic bomb, fell from the sky with great destruction. Many thousands of people were destroyed in Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

For many years there has been great fear and danger of World War Three. The Hopi believe the Persian Gulf War was the beginning of World War Three but it was stopped and the worst weapons of destruction were not used. This is now a time to weigh the choices for our future. We do have a choice. If you, the nations of this Earth, create another great war, the Hopi believe we humans will bum ourselves to death with ashes. That's why the spiritual Elders stress strongly that the United Nations fully open the door for native spiritual leaders as soon as possible.

Nature itself does not speak with a voice that we can easily understand. Neither can the animals and birds we are threatening with extinction talk to us. Who in this world can speak for nature and the spiritual energy that creates and flows through all life? In every continent are human beings who are like you but who have not separated themselves from the land and from nature. It is through their voice that Nature can speak to us. You have heard those voices and many messages from the four comers of the world today. I have studied comparative religion and I think in your own nations and cultures you have knowledge of the consequences of living out of balance with nature and spirit. The native peoples of the world have seen and spoken to you about the destruction of their lives and homelands, the ruination of nature and the desecration of their sacred sites. It is time the United Nations used its rules to investigate these occurrences and stop them now.

The Four Corners area of the Hopi is bordered by four sacred mountains. The spiritual center within is a sacred site our prophecies say will have special purpose in the future for mankind to survive and now should be left in its natural state. All nations must protect this spiritual center.

The Hopi and all original native people hold the land in balance by prayer, fasting and performing ceremonies. Our spiritual Elders still hold the land in the Western Hemisphere in balance for all living beings, including humans. No one should be relocated from their sacred homelands in this Western Hemisphere or anywhere in the world. Acts of forced relocation, such as Public Law 93-531 in the United States, must be repealed.¹

The United Nations stands on our native homeland. The United Nations talks about human rights, equality and justice and yet the native people have never had a real opportunity to speak to this assembly since its establishment until today. It should be the mission of your nations and this assembly to use your power and rules to examine and work to cure the damage people have done to this Earth and to each other. Hopi Elders know that

¹ See references to this law in the articles beginning on pages 33, 39 and 115.

was your mission and they wait to see whether you will act on it now.

Nature, the First People and the spirit of our ancestors are giving you loud warnings. Today, December 10, 1992, you see increasing floods, more damaging hurricanes, hail storms, climate changes and earthquakes as our prophecies said would come. Even animals and birds are warning us with strange change in their behavior such as the beaching of whales. Why do animals act like they know about the earth's problems and most humans act like they know nothing? If we humans do not wake up to the warnings, the great purification will come to destroy this world just as the previous worlds were destroyed.

(Thomas and Oren Lyons held up a picture of a large rock drawing in Hopiland – see page 5.)

This rock drawing shows part of the Hopi prophecy. There are two paths. The first with technology but separate from natural and spiritual law leads to these jagged lines representing chaos. The lower path is one that remains in harmony with natural law. Here we see a line that represents a choice like a bridge joining the paths. If we return to spiritual harmony and live from our hearts, we can experience a paradise in this world. If we continue only on this upper path, we will come to destruction.

Its up to all of us, as children of Mother Earth, to clean up this mess before it's too late.

The Elders request that during this International Year for the Worlds Indigenous Peoples, the United Nations keep that door open for spiritual leaders from the four corners of the world to come to speak to you for more than a few minutes as soon as possible. The Elders also request that eight investigative teams visit the native areas of the world to observe and tell the truth about what is being

done and stop these nations from moving in this self-destructive direction.

If any of you leaders want to learn more about the spiritual vision and power of the Elders, I invite you to come out to Hopiland and sit down with our real spiritual leaders in their sacred Kivas where they will reveal the ancient secrets of survival and balance.

I hope that all members of this assembly that know the spiritual way will not just talk about it, but in order to have real peace and *harmony*, will follow what it says across the United Nations wall: "They will beat their swords into plowshares and study war no more." Lets, together, do that now!

Epilogue

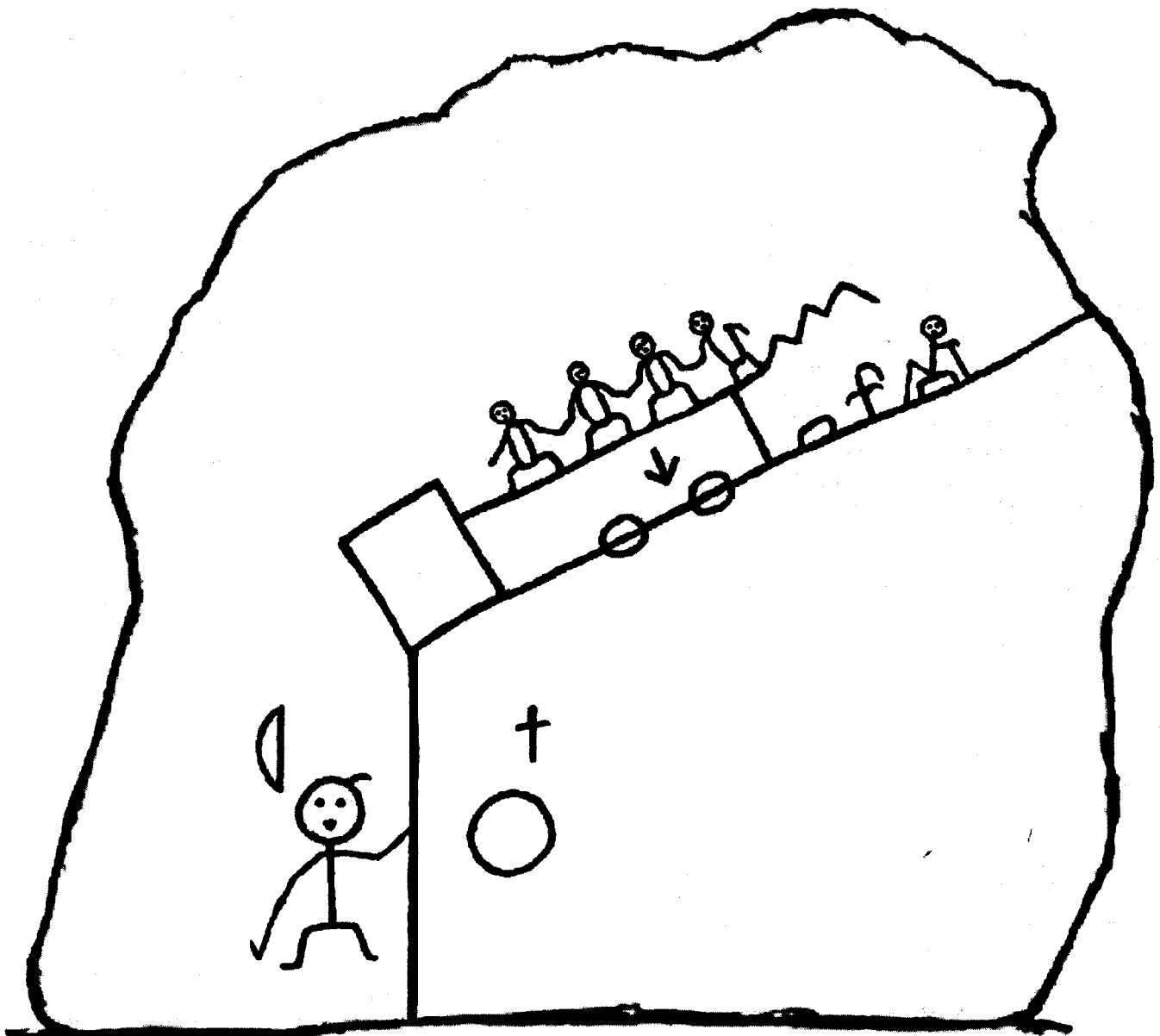
The night before the **presentations** of the native people from around the world to the General Assembly, ~~there~~ was a total eclipse of the moon over New York City and the sky was clear. The evening after the presentation by Mr. Banyacya and the other native spokespersons, heavy rain and strong wind began. The weathermen had been calling for a snowstorm but what came the following day were the worst floods in New York's memory. Major highways were washed away by the sea and ~~the~~ United Nations ~~itself~~ experienced flooding of its ~~lower~~ subfloors, forcing a shutdown of its heating and air conditioning and all personnel were dismissed at three o'clock.

in the ground floor meeting room, ~~where~~ on December 11, native peoples ~~were~~ meeting representatives of various UN ~~agencies~~, Thomas Banyacya spontaneously called on all the participants, including UN ~~officials~~, to form a great circle. All the Elders were in the center and Thomas called in some non-native people as well. Each silently said a prayer. The forming of the circle of unity of ~~aft~~ ~~people~~ from ~~the~~ four comers of the Earth was ~~more~~ than just a symbolic act. One participant said she had never felt herself to be in such a safe place. Later, several people present noted that no further storm damage occurred in Manhattan and ~~at the~~ storm itself abated that afternoon.

The Hopi Life Plan Petroglyph

On a hill above the Hopi village of Oraibi stands "Prophecy Rock": a sandstone boulder with a large flat face on the east side. Inscribed on the boulder is the "Hopi Life Plan Petroglyph" to which Grandfather Banyacya referred in his speech to the UN General Assembly in December 1992. (See page 2.) Below is a drawing of the petroglyph which is based on first person observations of the petroglyph itself and a detailed review with a traditional Hopi friend from the village of Hotevilla. Many of the published versions I have seen do not closely match the actual petroglyph. Similar petroglyphs can be found throughout the Southwest; there is an interesting version in Indian Petroglyph National Monument near Albuquerque, for example. See if you can find it among the estimated 25,000 images there (!)

Following the image is an excerpt from *Meditations With the Hopi* by Robert Boissiere (1986, Bear & Co.) It contains some interesting observations which obviously were informed by Hopi Sources. One discrepancy with the interpretation I received is noted with a footnote. (The graphic in *Meditations* does not match the Life Plan Petroglyph. A later book by Boissiere, *The Return of Pahanu*, 1990 does have a reasonably accurate depiction of Prophecy Rock.)



From Meditations *With* the Hopi by Robert Boissière:

Long before Pahana, the white man, ever set foot in the Americas; long before the hegemony of the red race had been challenged by light-skinned people, as the prophecies told us it would - a spot in the immensity of the desert, a center of Spiritual power, was Hopi. The land of the peaceful ones. The continent was different then: much space, few to occupy it.

But the energy coming from Hopi is in realms where communications are not of this world; in dimensions set by Taiowa and expressed by Massoua. Hopi was the thread, the bridge, the place of peace and balance.

If perhaps there is a name, a word, that can show the world what Hopi peace is - it is balance. The world must grow, expand, but it must do it in balance. Otherwise, nature, the great regulator, will take over, as it is now, with floods, eruptions, famine, earthquakes. This is nature at war, nature that will convince humankind of the need for balance, to set in motion positive energies to reestablish a world in balance.

In the beginning, we are told, Taiowa, the Creator, gave us his life plan, as it is written on the Rock of Oraibi which we call the prophecy.

If we hold fast to the sacred way as he devised it for us, what we have gained, we will never lose. But still, we have to choose between the two ways. This is the balance of Taiowa's way. For he will always meet us halfway. That is why on the sacred petroglyph he is portrayed holding in his hand the thread of the sacred way. In the other hand is the bow, for the Bow Clan is the one which led us out of the Underworld at the beginning of the Hopi Way. That is what the arrow shot from the bow means on the rock.² The diagram shows two lines: the lower line is the path of the Great Spirit, for in its last end, a man is bending on the cane the old ones use, pointing to the corn which is the sacred food that nourished us from the start. The old one shows he was the first and he will be the last. And so will we if we hold fast to his pathway.

But next to him, beware of the other way, the way of life of those who do not pray. It is easy enough to see that their heads are not fastened on their body, as it happens with people who use their mind, instead of their faith in the spirit way. As Taiowa's life plan shows, their line ends in a zigzag way, in the void of the mind of the faithless life and the fruitless.

But there is another line on the sacred map drawn on the rock - a vertical line that connects the two ways. It is like a ladder that some might use to change ways, to go from the way of peace and balance - Taiowa's Way - to a path

² What appears to be an arrow between the upper and lower paths is instead a birdfoot: a symbol of initiation.

that seems to many a much easier one. Finally seeing that the Hopi Way of balance is the only chance, many will choose to climb down the ladder, to go through the Great Spirit gateway.

This time of confusion, in which many will choose either path, is called a time of purification. The prophecy says the earth will shake three times: first the Great War, then the Second One, when the Swastika rose above the battlefield of Europe, to end in the Rising Sun sinking in a sea of blood, The end of an Empire . . . or perhaps the beginning of another? Now what would the third one be? This, the Prophecy does not say. For it depends on which path humankind will walk: the greed, the comfort, and the profit, or the path of love, strength, and balance.³

When strong-hearted people keep on singing the Song of Creation, they will find the true path, forgotten by many, so Grandpa David says.⁴ When prayer and meditation are used rather than relying on new inventions to create more imbalance, they will also find the true path. Mother Nature tells us which is the right way. When earthquakes, floods, hailstorms, drought, and famine will be the life of every day, the time will have then come for the return to the true path, or going the zigzag way.

Long ago, Massoua told us, "Remember the Pahana, the white brother. He has the other stone tablet, but he has not returned it, yet. He will be sent so the people who held fast to the Hopi Way can be spared from destruction. He is the purifier, for people to go on with the Great Spirit life plan. It will then open our hearts and minds when a new age is about to be, with people renewed and purified through fire.

It will be like the pure gold of a new day. But fire is red, and when it takes command, it will set the forces of nature in motion.

We will know when purification day has come. We all are the caretakers of life. The balance of nature depends on us. The world will be what we want it to be.

³ The three shakings of the world are indicated by the three circles on the lower path.

⁴ Late Hopi elder David Monongye, last traditional Kikmongwi of Hotevilla and editor of the traditional newsletter "Techqua Ikachi".

Messages from the UN Cry of the Earth Conference, November 22, 1993

On November 22, 1993, toward the end of the UN's "Year of Indigenous Peoples", a conference was held called the "CRY OF THE EARTH". This historic meeting included delegations from seven First Nations: Algonquin, Hopi, Huichol, Iroquois, Lakota, Maya and Mic Mac. The event was considered extremely significant by the delegates of the First Nations. According to Grandfather William Commanda, Algonquin, he and elders from several other nations including Hopi had discovered that each had centuries- or millennia-old prophecies relating to a time when the very health of the Earth Mother and continuation of human life were at stake. These prophecies, which relate to something called "Purification", matched one another in remarkable ways. The elders say that in the time of the fulfillment of the prophecies, Native peoples are to tell all the nations of the world so that people may change before it is too late.

However the conference, held in the Economic and Social Council Chambers of the UN, was sparsely attended. It is said the representatives of the nations of the world listened politely, and did nothing.

The following messages were printed on a brochure entitled "Messages" which was distributed at the conference:

Sponsored by: Mission of Mexico, Mission of the United States, United Nations Centre for Human Rights

Endorsed by: American Indian Institute, American Indian Ritual Object Repatriation Foundation, Anglican Liaison to the United Nations, Cathedral of St. John the Divine, Earth Circle Foundation, Fund of the Four Directions, Giving of Thanks to the First People, Instituto Nacional Indigenista, International Labor Organisation, Mexican Cultural Institute, M.O.A. Foundation National Museum of the American Indian, Natural Resources Defense Council, Temple of Understanding, Tree of Peace Society, UNICEF, United Nations Development Programme, United Nations Environment Programme, World Uranium Hearing

With Special Recognition To: The Wittenberg Center for Alternative Resources

I am pleased to welcome to the United Nations those attending this conference on the theme: Cry of the Earth, the Legacy of the First Nations. The Spiritual Elders of the Four Directions have come to New York with a message. It is a message of warning which all of us, regardless of our particular faith, must share. In 1992, at Rio de Janeiro, the world community raised a cry of distress. The cry of distress, of pain at the state of the planet has been heeded. No longer can we take the resources of nature as ours to master. No longer can we behave as the conquerors of nature. The path to sustainable development is to respond to the legitimate aspiration of peoples for better living standards while ensuring that future generations retain the qualities of life in harmony with our habitat. The responsibility of this generation is tremendous. It is in our power to choke the living organism of nature, but it is also in our power to

preserve it, to nurture it, to replace plunder with harmony and waste with conservation. The concerns of sustainable development come late, but not too late. We have known all along, with the poet William Blake: "For everything that lives is holy, life delights in life." Today, the Spiritual Elders come to remind us of this truth. It is my sincere hope that we come to share their concerns and their delight in life. Welcome then to the United Nations; to your United Nations.

—Boutros Boutros-Ghali, Secretary General of the United Nations

Prophecy is that form of vision that informs and propels the truest moral and spiritual leadership... Every true leader must possess such vision, as well as the courage to follow it despite whatever hardships might be thrown in the way. Today we meet as leaders who aspire to such vision. In this United Nations Year of the World's Indigenous People we come together in council with a clear goal in mind and heart: as representatives of many nations together, we wish to and must help to shape a universal pact between humanity and the planet.

—S.R. Insanally, President of the 48th Session of the United Nations General Assembly

For all Anishnabe people, the Wampum Belts are the keys of Traditional Reality.

They are the patterns of life — the doorway uniting Physical and Spiritual dimensions. It is significant that these belts — having never been held by outside forces — are Spiritually alive. They embody the activating power

of the Spiritual World. The Seven Fires Belt talks of seven doorways, dimensions, traditional nations, spaces in time. Its message is woven throughout Turtle Island, and applies to all four races of Earth. It describes very grave destruction **that** has currently affected the balance of all life – environmental and spiritual genocide resulting from these doorways being blocked.

It is essential for the Anishnabe – all human beings – to rekindle these fires and reopen these doorways. Joining these Seven Doors, we may light the Eighth Fire – the Double Diamond reunifying human life with the Spiritual dimensions. Forgiveness **and** sacrifice are the keys. The Belts warn of the very near time when Earth will shift Her balance in the Universe, with or without her children. This re-balancing of Life is certain to occur, reordering both physical and spiritual reality. It is our urgent responsibility to transform humanity and harmonize with these changes.

Healing must be our imperative concern.

-Algonquin Nation Seven Fires Prophecy – Presented by Traditional Chief William Commanda, Carrier of the Wampum Belts

From the Eastern Door: We **are** in the final stages of the shaking of the earth, when the Great Spirit takes the earth in both hands and shakes it violently.

Just this year, the opening of the Eastern Door took place in Cape Spear, Newfoundland, Canada, the furthest eastern point in North America. The circle of the medicine wheel is now complete. The Wabanaki People (People of the Light) have joined the circle. We have joined the circle with the following philosophy:

“Heal you, the self, you help heal the family,
The family helps to heal the community,
The community helps to **heal** the nation,
The nations help to heal the world.”

All the prophecies from other nations now coincide and complement each other. It is time for us all to stop blaming one another, heal from our wounds and move forward; for the survival of the world, as we know it, lies in our hands. We must seek out and absorb the wisdom of our elders and use it for the betterment of others. **The** Great Spirit left a clear and legible path in eastern North America with petroglyphs and natural monuments. This knowledge is kept under guard by our elders and only entrusted to those native people who abide by the natural laws of the Great Spirit; respect, honesty, sharing and caring. Without each one of these, the others do not exist.

It is now time for Moms, Dads, Grandmothers, Grandfathers and children to get involved in the healing of our world. Make it your business too.

–David Gehue, Spiritual Counselor, Mi-kmac Nation

When the world ends, it will be like when the names of things are changed during the peyote **hunt**. All will be different, the opposite of what it is now. Now there are two eyes in the heavens, Dios Sol-and **Dios** Fuego. Then, the moon will open his eye and become brighter. The sun will become dimmer. There will be no more differences. No more men and women. No child and no adult. All will change places. Even the mara'akame will no longer be separate. That is why there is always a nunuisi (**Huichol**–little baby) when we go to Wirikuta. Because the old man, the tiny baby, they are the same.

-Huichol Proverb

When the original thirteen baktuns were created, a war was waged which caused the country to cease to exist. Little by little, however, our enemies came to hear the prophecies of Ahau; but finally even the hope of hearing Ahau is brought to an end, because of the words of opposition. When the need arises for the high authority at the head of the mat to safeguard our children, then we will feel deeply the tragedy of being captives in war; **also** when we are ordered to obey...And when over the dark sea I shall be lifted by a chalice of fire, to that generation there will come the day of withered fruit...The face of the sun will be extinguished because of the great tempest. Then **finally** ornaments **shall** descend in heaps. There will be good gifts for one and **all**, as well as land, from the Great Spirit wherever shall come sailing, figuratively speaking, bringing the ornaments of which I have spoken, from your ancestors. Then the god will come to visit his little ones. Perhaps “After Death” will be the subject of his discourse.

-Mayan, Prophecy of the End of the Great Cycle, from The Book of Chilam Balam of Tizimin

Sacred ground is ground that is invested with belief. Belief, at its root, exists independent of meaning. That is, expression and object may escape what we can perceive as definable meaning. The intrinsic power of sacred ground is often ineffable and abstract. I behold a particular sacred space, and I understand-that it **is in** some way earned. It is consecrated, made holy with offerings – song and ceremony, joy and sorrow, the dedication of the mind and heart, offerings of life and death. The words “sacred” and “sacrifice” are related. And acts of **sacrifice** make sacred the earth. The indigenous people of the world know this as they know the sunrise and sunset.

-N. Scott Momaday, Kiowa, Pulitzer Prize Winning Author

We must all work together to protect our natural heritage, our flora and fauna, and the overall health of our global environment. These goals have always been an integral part of the spiritual traditions of those native to the soil of the Americas. Please keep me apprised of the accomplishments of this meeting as well as any future events inspired by your conference.

-Al Gore, Vice President of the United States

I was born on the Menominee Indian Reservation in Wisconsin, a land of dense forests, a winding river, and streams and lakes that nourish the land, animals, and the people. I am an extension of this environment that has fostered my growth and enriched my vision and spirit. An appreciation and reverence for the land is fundamental to being Indian. I am proud to declare that the Menominee tribal forest is one of the few forests in this hemisphere that is better today than it was one hundred years ago. My vision for Indians in the United States and this hemisphere is enriched by this legacy. We must embrace the challenges of the future fortified by the knowledge of our past.

-Ada Deer, Menominee, Assistant Secretary -Indian Affairs, U.S. Department of the Interior

We are now living in the fourth and final world of the Hopi. We are at a most critical time in human history. It is a crossroads at which the outcome of our actions will decide the fate of life on earth.

At the beginning of this fourth world the Hopi were told to watch for specific signs which would mark this crucial period and given instructions for actions to avoid the annihilation of this world and for life to continue.

Instructions included a directive to travel to a great house of mica (glass) which would be built on the distant eastern shore of this continent where leaders of this earth's nations would gather. The Hopi were instructed to knock on the door of this house in order to deliver their message to those gathered there. If refused, they were to knock again, until they had done so four times.

Since 1949, the Hopi have knocked at the door of the United Nations. Last December was the fourth and final time they would do so. Having received an invitation from the United Nations, this historic gathering which Hopi spiritual leaders have requested is the final fulfillment of these instructions.

-On behalf of the Spiritual Elders, Hotevilla, Hopi Nation

It is prophesied in our Instructions that the end of the world will be near when the trees start dying from the tops down. That's what the maples are doing today. Our Instructions say the time will come when there will be no corn, when nothing will grow in the garden, when the water will be unfit to drink...We were instructed to carry a love for one another and to show great respect for all beings of the **earth...In** our ways, spiritual consciousness is the highest form of politics...We must live in harmony with the Natural World and recognize that excessive exploitation can only lead to our own destruction. We cannot trade the welfare of our future generations for profit now...We must stand together, the four sacred colors of man, as the one family that we are, in the interest of peace. We must abolish nuclear and conventional weapons of war...We must raise leaders of peace. We must unite the religions of the world as the spiritual force strong enough to prevail in peace. We are the spiritual energy that is a thousand times stronger than nuclear energy. Our energy is the combined will of all people with the spirit of the Natural World, to be of one body, one heart, and one mind for peace.

-Leon Shenandoah, Tadodaho, Six Nations Iroquois Confederacy

The prophecies of the Ancestors of the Lakota Nations have important meaning for the future of Mother Earth. Through the generations, these prophecies have been maintained courageously, methodically and accurately. Now, we are in a critical stage of our spiritual and moral and technological development as nations. All life is precariously balanced. We must remember that all things on Mother Earth have spirit and are intricately related. The Lakota prophecy of Mending the Sacred Hoop of all nations has begun. May we find, in the ancient wisdom of the Indigenous Nations, the spirit and courage to mend and heal.

-Arvol Lookinghorse, 19th Generation Keeper of the Sacred Pipe, Lakota Nation

Many years of United Nations action for the Human Rights of Indigenous Peoples have culminated in impressive successes in the last few years. The International Year of the World's Indigenous People set two basic aims as the framework for international action; to create awareness about the situation and the aspirations of indigenous peoples, and to integrate **indigenous** concerns in the operations of **the** United Nations system with the full **participation** of indigenous communities in projects which concern them. Through the historic processes of drafting the United Nations declaration on the rights of indigenous peoples, the Rio Conference on Environment and Development, and the Vienna Conference on Human Rights, the world has learned to respect and listen to the wisdom of indigenous

peoples and to recognize their unique contribution to civilization. The door of the United Nations is and will remain open for indigenous peoples.

-Ibrahima Fall, Assistant Secretary General for Human Rights (UN)

~~~~~

The Wittenberg Center For Alternative Resources  
188 Wittenberg Road, Bearsville, NY 12409  
PH: 914-679-9764 FAX: 914-595-7813

Much time and energy has been dedicated to the realization of the dream of having the prophecies of

Turtle Island (North America) be told at the United Nations during 1993 - The Year of the Indigenous Peoples.

What you've just read is a small portion of the many important statements and discussions from this historic meeting. The Spiritual Elders from the Four Directions of Turtle Island brought a much needed voice to the United Nations for the first time.

"When we walk upon Mother Earth, we always plant our feet carefully because we know the faces of our future generations are looking up at us from beneath the ground. We never forget them."

*-Oren Lyons, Faithkeeper, Onondaga Nation*

## Statement by Martin Gashweseoma, Hopi, given at the Cry of the Earth conference

**Grandfather Martin Gashweseoma, Fire Clan, is the only remaining Traditional Hopi Elder of whom I am aware. Grandfather Dan Evehema passed to Spirit in January, 1999, and Grandfather Thomas Banyacya followed him on February 6th. Here is the statement Grandfather Gashweseoma gave at the Cry of the Earth conference:**

---

### CRY OF THE EARTH CONFERENCE

General Assembly, United Nations  
November 22, 1993

by Martin Gashweseoma  
Hopi Caretaker of the Sovereign Hopi Nation  
Box 753  
Hotevilla, AZ 86030

We come here from the Sovereign Hopi Nation to attend the "CRY OF THE EARTH" conference at the United Nations. We are proud that you have opened the door for us. My name is Martin Gashweseoma. As Hopi, we have come here to present our message which is about how we first came here from the previous world.

The Hopi way is to lead a good life and through our ceremonials and meditations, we take care of this land and life. We still have the sacred stone tablets given to us by the Spider Woman. This is our title and deed to this world, and it was given to us with the life plan to follow, and with strong instructions and serious warnings.

It was a good life. When the rains came and brought a lot of moisture, then our crops would yield enough for all living beings, including the ants, animals, birds, plants and human kind.

Before leaving the previous world, we came up here to ask permission from the Great Spirit, Massau'u, if we could live here with him because the world down below had become corrupted. He told the people "It is up to you if you are willing to live with full respect for my way of life." They said, "Yes we are willing to live your way." So with his consent we came here, into this new world. This world is where the Great Spirit, Massau'u, first appeared to all first peoples, and gave them their instructions and rules to follow. Then the Spider Woman laid before them ears of corn of different colors, from which to take their sustenance and livelihood. The greediest people hurried to pick out the longest ears. But the Hopi, being the most humble waited until last and chose the shortest ears of corn. Spider Woman then gave all the peoples their instructions. She also gave each group of people their own language and name and told them to migrate to every corner of this continent leaving their footprints, clan markings, and ruins to claim this land. Those who found the Great Spirit, Massau'u, first would become the leaders of those who would come later. So they migrated all over this land.

Before the migrating peoples arrived at the place where the Great Spirit, Massau'u, lives, he used to take walks nearby his home. Coming back home, bringing back violet flowers, he dropped them along the way. After discovering he had dropped the violet flowers, he went back to look for them, but the flowers had already been found by the Horny Toad Woman. The Great Spirit, Massau'u, asked if she would give it back but the Horny Toad Woman refused. Instead, she told him that in time there would be a crisis in this world, with which he would need help. At that time she would be there with her steel helmet to help. Meaning that someday if the Hopi got into trouble, a group of people with the steel helmet would help them.

It was the Hopi who found the Great Spirit, Massau'u, first. On meeting him they asked him where he lived. He told them that he lived at Oraibi. He did not give its full name which is Sip Oraibi, which means the place where the earth was made solid. They asked the Great Spirit, Massau'u, if he could be their great leader. But the Great Spirit, Massau'u, saw in them that they still had selfish desires and many evil intentions. He did not want to be their great leader until they fulfilled all their desires. He would then be their first leader and the last.

The Great Spirit, Massau'u, let the first group or clan who had found him live there with him and settle down. After that, each subsequent group of people who came to settle in Oraibi after their migrations were allowed to stay based on judgment of their character and how they had traveled when they were searching for the Great Spirit, Massau'u. Those who were boastful and arrogant were sent away to the east. Those of humble and sincere hearts were allowed to stay and keep the ceremonials in the proper manner to ensure rain for the crops and all living things.

After this was settled, all the things that were to come were told to the first people in Oraibi by the first people that came from the underworld. And these understandings or prophecies as they are also called were continued, passed on from generation to generation from that day to this. The people were told of another race of people who would come to this land and claim it as their own land. We were told not to accept anything these people would offer to us, but it will tempt us and be hard to resist. They would be intelligent and the inventors of many things. Now we realize that these people are the light-skinned

people, the Bahanas. We were told of something that would come that would be pulled by animals, meaning wagons or carts. And ones that would run very fast, meaning automobiles and other motorized vehicles.

We were told of the land being cut up by long roads and fences, and of highways that would be built in the sky. And that women would adopt male clothing. And that the secret of women, with clothing, covered, would no longer be secret, but be revealed and exposed....

When this happens, all the world leaders and all the people will be corrupted and will not know whom to look for direction to correct this corruption. When all this happens, it **will** mean that we are all nearing the end. Then the wars **will** come about like powerful winds, and will spread from country to country and bring Purification or Destruction to this world.

The more we turn away from the instructions of the Great Spirit, Massau'u, the more signs we see in the form of earthquakes, floods, drought, fires, tornadoes, as Nature makes ready her revenge. All of this will happen at one time **along** with the wars and corruption. We see this now as young children become angry, killing each other and their parents. They show no respect. We are all corrupt.

If this Purification does not materialize then the world will turn over 4 times and will leave only ants here to start a new life. Before people came to this world they were sick, just as today, we are sick from all this corruption. Now we are seeking a way to solve our present situation. This is the last world, we are not going anywhere from here. If we destroy this, the highest world, which is like heaven, we will be given no other chances. Let us consider this matter seriously so that this world is not destroyed, so that we can continue to live and save this land and life for the generations to come.

## Statement by Manuel Hoyungowa, Hopi, at the Cry of the Earth conference

In addition to Grandfather Gashweseoma's statement, a statement by Manuel Hoyungowa – grandson of the late traditional elder David Monongye – also was made at the Cry of the Earth conference. The following transcript was posted in 1993 by The Wittenberg Center For Alternative Resources:

---

Submitted by Manuel Hoyungowa, Messenger from  
Sovereign Hopi Nation and Prophecy Message of  
Monongye, Religious Leader, Sovereign Hopi Nation to  
the United Nations

September 1962

Re-submitted 11 / 23/ 93 by the grandson of Monongye,  
Manuel Hoyungowa, "CRY OF THE EARTH", General  
Assembly, United Nations, New York

-----  
For further information please contact  
Manuel Hoyungowa,  
Box 268, Kykotsmovi, AZ 86039  
-----

My name is Manuel Hoyungowa, of the Sovereign Hopi  
Nation. It is a great honor to be able to be here today to  
present a few of the Hopi prophecies and some of the  
problems that we are facing with the Bureau of Indian  
Affairs (BIA), which was created by the U.S. government  
and the Hopi Tribal Council.

I would like to begin with some messages given to us by our  
elders. How it used to be a good life, now our lives have  
changed. Because of this new education, new culture. From  
the beginning it was forced upon our forefathers to go to  
school and learn new ways. As years went by, education  
became something that we accepted and it became normal  
to go to school so that we could further ourselves. As I was  
growing up I remember that our elders traveled with  
donkeys, then with wagons, then the first automobile  
came. All these came about, the things that our elders  
and high leaders, discussed in meetings at my  
grandfather's house. Now I know why they discussed  
these things with great concern, as I came to realize that  
this is true. I too am concerned now. I am not a high  
leader. I am just a common person that realizes this world  
is in trouble. I did not ever believe that I would be here to  
talk to the world. We are facing a serious situation and  
the world is out of balance. Our elders are old now. They  
knocked on the door of the United Nations many times,  
but they refused to open the doors for them. Most of them  
are too old now or gone. Therefore, we are coming to bring  
this message on their behalf to the United Nations about  
our prophecies.

Our elders say that the white men just came over  
yesterday. We say this for we have been here for many

thousands of years before them. When the white men  
came, an intelligent person, he invented many things. He  
changed things.

He had the same teachings from the Great Spirit, but he  
changed the symbol. He brought his own symbol and he  
wanted to convert the Hopi people to Christianity. In  
many ways he wanted to change us and take our lands  
away from us.

So it is this foreign influence that is disturbing the Hopi  
way of life and has almost destroyed the life plan given  
to us be the Great Spirit. Not just the Hopi people, but all  
native people that live on this land.

When the white man first came here we welcomed him  
and fed him. We greeted him with open arms and let him  
live here with us. After settling down in our homeland  
they built something called the House of Mica (the  
United Nations). The House of Mica speaks of a good life  
and has said: 'That if anyone has any troubles, if no one  
will help you anywhere, bring your problems over to us  
and we will help you with our writings. That we will  
correct and change these things, not by war, but by the  
law, and stop all of these wrongdoings.'

Now, as we come here, most of our land has been taken  
from us.

The Hopi Tribal Council looks to the Secretary of Interior  
for its authority and power. In our traditional form of  
government we look to our elders for council. Also, we  
wish it to be known that the Hopi Tribal Council violates  
its own constitution and by-laws in refusing to consult  
with our elders before important decisions are made. Our  
sacred land is being stripped of our mineral resources, a  
violation of the agreement we have with the Great  
Spirit to live here as caretakers of the land.

The Hopi Tribal Council was created illegally for the  
purpose of signing our lands away for mineral resource  
development in cooperation with big business: The Hopi  
Tribal Council for greed has been created to negotiate  
business deals with Peabody Coal Company for the strip  
mining of Black Mesa/Kayenta mine, the largest coal  
strip mine in the country. And for monetary gain our water  
is being depleted, and our survival is at stake. Over one  
billion gallons of water each year is being pumped from  
our aquifer to transport coal. This is the only coal water

transport system-slurry line in the United States in a desert environment. Without water we cannot survive.

And in addition to the desecration of our sacred land, and depletion of our water, we are facing water pipelines, electricity and phone lines coming into our village of Hotevilla. We know that these things cannot come into our sacred village. Hotevilla, the last traditional stronghold, in prophecy is connected to the four directions. We have always rejected these conveniences and in this, the final phase, we must remain Traditional and Strong. If we fulfill our prophecy and our village of Hotevilla, allows these conveniences to come in, then we face sudden destruction and purification in this world. Our traditional elders and forefathers have always been fighting this. But the Hopi Tribal Council is strong and has forced their way into all the other villages. We ask you now to help us ensure that Hotevilla continue to preserve the traditional way.

We have **always** been required to obtain permits to herd cattle, livestock, housing, farming, coal and wood gathering. This is not the Hopi way. Now some of the highest Hopi religious leaders are asking permission from the Hopi Tribal Council to obtain permits to farm and herd cattle and for housing. Instead of the Tribal Council asking the Hopi religious leaders for permission to do these things. So now they have almost complete control of our land and life, and we are at the last stages.

It was told to us that the Hopi will be the last ones to have their lands taken away, of all native peoples. And we now have has our own borders drawn under our feet, indicating that all our land has been reduced by White's man's law putting us within a boundary they call District 6.

Since most of our elders are gone and old now. They were supposed to come speaking as high leaders from our Nation to you. Therefore, we are bringing their message to you on their behalf.

So it is up to you to consider these matters seriously to follow up this with a serious investigation. We invite you to come to Hopi land on behalf of the high religious leaders. You are most welcome to come. If you do not take any action about what we believe to be these wrong doings, Purification or Destruction may occur.

For this is our belief that we know that something terrible might happen, Purification or Destruction. If we work together we can try to save as many lives as possible. That is why we are here today to give you our strong message. We give you 4 days, 4 weeks, 4 months to come to Hopi land and investigate these matters.

Nothing was supposed to be taken from within our ground. This is sacred land and no minerals were to be taken out of the ground. This we know is why the earth is now out of

balance. It is imperative at this time that <sup>you come out</sup> here look into these matters, otherwise Purification will come without mercy. The white man has almost destroyed all the life plan given to us by the Great Spirit. If you investigate these wrong doings and correct them then you will purify yourselves and avoid any punishment. This will also bring the life plan back to order. But since we have deviated from the life plan it is up to you, the world leaders to return by example.

When the white man came and offered us many things, and papers for us to sign. We have refused to sign these things that would risk our land and life. We have never signed a treaty with the U.S. government and any nation. From overseas the foreign people came here to talk about a good life plan and built a House of Mica (the United Nations). Our elders said that we could come to you with our problems. We have tried to bring our problems to the U.S. government but we have received no help. Therefore, we come again to you to ask for help.

I wish to refresh your memories back to a critical time in 1962, when my grandfather, Monongye came to the United Nations but was not allowed in. The same situation still exists and we are again facing a critical situation. He has stated that when the evil forces take over then we face corruption. And it is this corruption that has created the world out of balance. In fulfillment of my grandfathers great desire to speak before you, I am now honored to finally bring to you these words on his behalf.

The purpose of this gathering of Indian and non-Indian Brothers is to consider seriously, together, a way to accomplish or fulfill the great task of bringing about World Peace, Brotherhood and Everlasting Life for all good people who are now living with us in our homeland.

So let us remember that we are gathered here not **only** for the Hopi people, but we are seriously thinking of the future and benefit of all other Indian People on this continent. And we include the white people who have come upon our land and settled with us.

These matters are of no small value, this is not a little thing. Instead, this is the very foundation of all of us humans who are living on this land. Our common life together is based on the Life Plan our Great Spirit has given to us. It is a Life Plan with strong instructions and a serious warning that we must never lose faith - no matter how difficult that may be.

As foretold by our forefathers, ~~our prophets~~ we may find ourselves in these 'Last Days' tightly bound up with irregularities of man-made laws or be suffering-greatly for neglecting the spiritual laws of the Great Spirit, Massau'u. Evil forces may take control of our forms of government of the world and rule dictatorially. All over the land, freedom of the people will be suppressed or denied them. Evil rulers will look more to material



things than to the spiritual laws of the Great Spirit. When this happens there will be unrest all over the world. There will be gradual corruption and confusion among the leaders and the people all over the world, and wars will come about like powerful winds.

WHAT IS TO BE DONE NOW? WHERE SHALL WE GO FROM HERE? How are we going to save ourselves from this terrible invention of war? These questions are, we are sure, in the minds and hearts of men everywhere today. Humanity stands at the brink of self destruction. A majority of the people are and have been led by their evil leaders to the edge of disaster. Are we going to submit weakly to rules or leadership of Evil Men to our sorrow and shame or are we Courageous and Faithful enough to return ourselves to the spiritual road of the Great Spirit?

Great Spirit, Massau'u who we **firmly** believed is here with us, listening to us and watching over us, long ago gave to all races of people a good Life Plan to follow. His commandment to all was "Be Faithful Always and I **will** be the Last." Then in very clear and simple words told us to love one another, to be kind to all people, animal and plant life on this Mother **Earth**. **Hopi** and other Indian Brothers are fully aware of these great teachings.

But what happens today? Mankind is doing exactly the things the Great Spirit told us not to. For material gains many people have **killed**, lied, stolen, robbed their neighbors' property and heaped falsehood upon their fellow beings. There is, hardly any true love, only hatred in the hearts of men today. The greatest concern of the Hopi and others, at this moment, is not the powerful weapons invented by men but the WRATH of the Great Spirit. The more we turn away from the Great Spirit the more He will punish us either with earthquakes, floods, lightning, great winds or all kinds of sickness or drought.

I am sorry to say that your leaders in Washington or the White House seem to neglect this truth and insist on making more powerful weapons of destruction. They will never bring about real peace. They will only bring sudden death to all living things on the Earth. Knowing these truths and facts the Hopi leaders will continue to adhere to the teachings of the Great Spirit. They will not want to molest human being or animal or plant life. Hopi will not invent anything to destroy human being. Neither will they **allow** their minerals to be taken out at this time, for they know they will be used, for war purposes by present leaders. Our Great Spirit has sternly warned us against it. Therefore our leaders will not want our young men to be forced to go to war in foreign soil.

Hopi leaders and **Religious** men will stand firmly upon the words of the Great Spirit for they have made sacred oath or agreement with Him that they will never turn away from Him.

We know from our ancient teachings that there will be many good white people who will one day understand us and help to preserve and maintain our Spiritual Way of Life, for they will recognize soon that the only way to salvation for them in the future is to help the Hopi in this hour of need. This has been also prophesied.

Our Hopi leaders who have faith in the Great Spirit, have **been** beaten up by U.S. Government officials, jailed and forced to make roads on our land. Yet, in spite of all those injustices, they remained faithful to their religious beliefs. They continue to work and pray for all of us so that the Great Spirit will not neglect us or punish us, but will save all those faithful **ones and** allow them to enter real peace, brotherhood and everlasting life.

But before that day comes there will be a day of Purification of this land. These are some of the things that Hopi people know and adhere to in order to save many good people at the Purification Day."

And in fulfillment of our mission here, both with the spirit of my grandfather, Monongye, **and I**. We firmly believe that coming together today like this is a fulfillment of one of our prophecies. So we hope that you will listen to our warnings and act accordingly.

Thank you

## Statement by William Commanda, Algonquin, at the UN Cry of the Earth Conference

Grandfather William Commanda of Maniwaki, Quebec is the Keener of the Seven Fires Wampum Belt of the Anishnabe (Algonquin peoples). The Seven-Fires Prophecy of the Anishnabe is spiritually encoded in this belt. The following transcription by Gayil Nalls of Grandfather Commanda's speech at the UN is unintelligible in places, perhaps due to the difficulty of translating unfamiliar spiritual concepts into English. Another version of the Seven Fires Prophecy – also from Grandfather Commanda – can be found on page 77

---

### CRY OF THE EARTH CONFERENCE General Assembly, United Nations November 22, 1993

Algonquin Delegation  
William Commanda, Keeper of the Wampum Belts  
Marc Thompson, Ojibway  
Edmund Decontie  
Frank Decontie

(Frank Decontie translated for Grandfather Commanda)

I want to thank the great Creator to be able to be here today and share with you the sacred message. We are here due to the urgency of the cry of our Mother Earth and the urgency of our concerns for all forms of life, physical and spiritual. We have agreed to present our Wampum Belts which are a sacred link to the spiritual and physical forces which contain the forces and knowledge of life, from the past, to the present, to the future. They come to us from other dominions. What we are going to explain to you through these Wampum Belts is what it is, where it comes from, why it is sacred, what it reveals to us of the future, why we have a choice for the future, how the answers are there, but only if we listen and join again with the spiritual worlds. Otherwise the balance of the Earth will shift her axis and life will be gravely disturbed and harmed by this process. This is why the healing is essential.

This sacred Wampum Belt is the Wampum Belt of the Seven Fires. This Wampum Belt has seven Diamonds which represent the Seven Fires. We pray every day that our waters will come back as it was created by the Creator when only First Nations were living in the Continents of the Americas. All waters were pure and healthy. Today we are experiencing many sicknesses that we contract from drinking the poisons from the water. The medical doctors are not able to find a cure for diseases that confront us and it is costing an impossible amount of money to medical departments who are trying to save lives. Today the paper mills, who are polluting the waters and the so-called tourists are not helping to cure the waters. They pollute with motor boats and are spilling the gas in the waters. It is happening continuously up north in Canada. This is the first reading of the first diamond.

We pray every day to our Mother the Earth and we ask the Creator to help us save the Earth so she can keep

on to provide us with all kinds of fruit, berries and gardens. We pray that the air pollution will be eliminated so that all kinds of grass and our medicines will stay alive and strong. We pray to the Mother Earth so that she could continue to do her job and that is to provide nourishment growth for all living creation of which she is responsible. We pray every day to the Creator for all kinds of different trees that she had provided us so that we could make all kinds of crafts, canoes, snow shoes, toboggans, to provide us with stove wood so our children will not be cold. We all give thanks to our Creator for our tree relations. It is a sad experience of what we see today, that all the trees are dying from air pollution. There are no more White Birch trees of good quality to make a Birch Bark Canoe. Hard wood mills are not helping to preserve those trees. The veneer plants are not helping because of their mass production manufacturing towards this one material.

We pray everyday that the air that we breathe becomes pure so that we may remain healthy. It is causing our eyes to fade. We are unable to see as we once did in the past years. Breathing the poison air everyday is causing our women to develop cancer and other ailments. The wildlife is not too healthy as we have noticed for the last twenty years. Our animal and bird relations are being continuously harmed and will eventually die, due to this problem of air pollution.

We pray day after day, to find a solution to be able to save our children from drugs and alcohol. They are destroying their lives. They are bleeding their parents for money to nourish their habits. Our children, at times, steal from their parents. With the habit of stealing they become professional liars. Therefore, we don't know when they are telling the truth. It is a very sad situation to see our upcoming generation to be in this predicament.

We pray that our fish will come back as the Creator has created them. We are concerned for all living things that live in the waters, whether they are big or small, that are presently being contaminated and destroyed as we deliver this message to you.

Seventh reading. We pray that our birds may still survive for they too are suffering because of air pollution and earth damages of wood, berries and other food supplies that they rely on to survive. The water pollution does not help matters any for our bird relations. They are being poisoned by these types of harm. We as a people believe that when our bird relations become extinct, that all life will cease to exist. The prophecy of

the Seven Fires Belt, our ancestors, people of the East, the Beotucks, mentioned the Seven Prophets. People were warned by their Elders about the first prophet. Would he be serious or not, that would come to our people.

The second prophet. The Elders warned the people to observe his behavior. Would everything be beautiful and valuable? This is how you will recognize his wants or desires through his actions of greed.

The third prophet. The people were warned that when the third prophet arrived, he would have something in his hand like a knife or a gun. We have to be careful. He will wound or kill with what he carries.

The fourth prophet. The people were warned that the fourth prophet will live amongst our people and therefore mix the blood of our blood.

The fifth prophet. The people were warned about how he will speak with his tongue. If he speaks of the Creator he will be known through his manner of speech.

The sixth prophet. People were warned that this prophet will arrive from the East and journey to the West. He will tamper with many different minerals of Mother Earth.

The seventh prophet. People were warned of the seventh prophet. When he arrives this prophet will have three different colors or races that do not exist with us at this time. Our Grandfathers have explained that one will come that will have a black robe or black dress with a belt that has a cross attached. His work is like a sunrise reflecting. His work and teaching will also be reflecting. Our Grandfather said that there will be others that will come in large numbers like the way our trees are standing. You see that Birch Tree that is standing? That is the color of the person. You look at the other side and you will see that yellow cobbler color and this will be the color of that other person. You look at the red color trees, such as the Red Spruce and you are

reflecting within yourself. You look at the other direction, the Black Cherry Tree, and this is the color of this person. You return to the East where the Eastern Native People, the Beotucks, Newfoundland. During the 1800s, the Belt with beads that were cut off and divided in two, two diamonds. Our Grandfathers mentioned that this meant that two Anishnabe Nations will cease to exist. The Nakadis? and the Montagnais? When the fire was lit at the Eastern direction to the Western direction the Algonquin languages were then connected and understood from sea to sea. When the fire was lit at the Western direction it was said there would be no talking for 400 years. It has been a hundred years that the Native People have been talking for the recognition rights and to the land. When the fire from the West is to be lit the journey towards the East to the arrival of the Double Diamond Belt there will be an enormous gathering. It has passed and is known as the Referendum. This will be used to destroy all the Anishnabe beliefs and rights of the First Occupants of the North American continent. This did not pass or come to be. The immigrants got discouraged and did not pursue the Referendum. The Creator allowed the good vision to the First Nation, our Grandfathers that when the time comes to give the First Nation the opportunity to receive the Natural Rights and Laws.

The Second Diamond will close the Eighth Diamond, entrenched to the Seven Nations, our buyers (?). At this time there will be a Purification, a cleansing of the Earth. More than two thirds of the First Nations will perish. Many people believe that AIDS is killing millions of people today. Mother Nature acting through natural disasters such as tornadoes, earthquakes, fires and floods. This is the history of the teachings from the First Nation People and their prophecies.

## Statement by Leon Shenandoah, Iroquois Confederacy, at the UN, 1985

The following statement by Leon Shenandoah, Tadodaho, Haudenosaunee, (Chief of Chiefs, Six Nations Iroquois Confederacy) was given at the United Nations on October 25, 1985. This version is from the book *Wisdomkeepers: Meetings with Native American Spiritual Elders*, ©1990, Steve Wall & Harvey Arden, Beyond Words Publishing, Inc. Grandfather Shenandoah passed to the Spirit World in July 1996, as so many great Native American elders have recently done.

---

*Address to the General Assembly of the United Nations  
Delivered October 25, 1985 by Leon Shenandoah,  
Tadodaho, Haudenosaunee*

Brothers, listen to the words of the Creator given to the first United Nations, the Haudenosaunee, over 1,000 years ago.

The Chiefs of the Haudenosaunee shall be mentors of the people for all time. The thickness of their skins shall be seven spans, which is to say that they shall be proof against anger, offensive action, and criticism. Their hearts shall be full of peace and good will, and their minds full of a yearning for the welfare of the people. With endless patience, they shall carry out their duty. Their firmness shall be tempered with a tenderness for their people. Neither anger nor fury shall find lodging in their minds, and all their words and actions shall be marked by calm deliberation.'

In every nation there are wise and good people. These should be appointed Chiefs. They should be the advisors of their people and work for the good of all the people., and their power comes from the "Great Peace." A chief must never forget the Creator of mankind, never forget to ask the Creator for help. The Creator will guide our thoughts and strengthen us as we work to be faithful to our sacred trust and restore harmony among all peoples, all living creatures, and Mother Earth.

We were instructed to carry a love for one another and to show a great respect for all the beings of this earth... In our ways spiritual consciousness is the highest form of politics. When people cease to respect and express gratitude for these many things, then all life will be destroyed, and human life on this planet will come to an end.

These are our times and responsibilities. Every human being has a sacred duty to protect the welfare of our Mother Earth, from whom **all** life comes. In order to do this we must recognize the enemy -- the one within us. We must begin with ourselves.

We must live in harmony with the Natural World and recognize that excessive exploitation can only lead to our own destruction. We cannot trade the welfare of our future generations for profit now. We must abide by the Natural Law or be victims of its ultimate reality.

We must stand together, the four sacred colors of humans, as the one family we are, in the interest of peace.

We must abolish nuclear and conventional weapons of war.

When warriors are leaders, then you will have war. We must raise leaders of peace.

We must unite the religions of the world as the spiritual force strong enough to prevail in peace.

It is no longer good enough to cry, 'Peace.' We must act peace, live peace, and march in peace in **alliance** with the people of the world.

We are the spiritual energy that is thousands of times stronger than nuclear energy. Our energy is the combined will of **all** people with the spirit of the Natural World, to be of one body, one heart and one mind for peace.

We propose, as a resolution for peace, that October 24th be designated as a Day of Peace, and a world cease-fire take place in honor of our children and the Seventh Generation to come.

Day nay toh.

## ***The Hopi Story* by Hopi Elder Dan Katchongva**

This document can be found on the internet on the "Hopi Information Network":

[http:// www.infomagic.com/ ~abyte/ hopi/](http://www.infomagic.com/~abyte/hopi/)

Following are excerpts of remarks by Hopi Elder Dan Katchongva, Sun Clan, 1865-1972. Grandfather Katchongva is widely and fondly remembered as one of the wisest traditional elders. He was the son of Yukioma, the leader of the Traditionals who were forced out of the village of Oraibi by the "Progressives" in 1906. The Traditionals then founded the village of Hotevilla. (For a short version of Hopi history see page 39. For a more complete version, read *Hotevilla*.<sup>5</sup>) As Kikmongwi (traditional religious leader) of Hotevilla, Grandfather Katchongva was an important leader of the few remaining fully traditional Hopi. He was one of the 30 Elders author Frank Waters interviewed in 1961-1962 for *The Book of the Hopi* (see page 28).

The following remarks are from a 32 page pamphlet called *The Beginning of Life to the Day of Purification: The Hopi Story -- Teachings, History, and Prophecies of the Hopi People as told by the late Dan Katchongva, Sun Clan (1865-1972) complete text, translated by banagyumtewa*. I have been unable to find a copy of the original pamphlet which was distributed in the early 1970's by *The Planting Stick Project* of Santa Fe, New Mexico. I believe this was an organization created by Tom Tabet, who has been a student of Hopi Teachings and friend to Hopi Traditional Elders since the early 1960s.

---

### FROM THE BEGINNING OF LIFE TO THE DAY OF PURIFICATION

*The Hopi Story -- Teachings, History, and Prophecies of  
the Hopi People As told by the late Dan Katchongva,  
Sun Clan (1865-1972)*

Translated by Danagyumtewa.

Originally published in 1972 by the *Committee for  
Traditional Indian Land and Life Los Angeles,*  
California.

### INTRODUCTION

In a talk recorded on January 29, 1970, Dan told the story of the People of Peace, from the dawn of time to the attacks which led to the founding of Hotevilla in 1906, the school, money, and police systems which threaten to end the Hopi Way within this generation; and the consequences for America and the world.

The thought of publishing his talk grew from the recognition that those causing this tragedy, and the millions who support them, could not persist, had they but a glimpse of the purpose behind Hopi resistance to foreign control. Dan agreed to the publication of this booklet on condition that it never be sold, insisting that to sell Hopi teachings would be like selling his own mother.

In addition to the prophecies fulfilled during his lifetime, Dan was told by his father that he would live

to see the beginning of the final event of this era, the Great Day of Purification. Dan Katchongva died in 1972.

### THE BEGINNING OF LIFE

Somewhere down in the underworld we were created by the Great Spirit, the Creator. We were created first one, then two, then three. We were created equal, of oneness, living in a spiritual way, where the life is everlasting. We were happy and at peace with our fellow men. All things were plentiful, provided by our Mother Earth upon which we were placed. We did not need to plant or work to get food. Illness and troubles were unknown. For many years we lived happily and increased to great numbers.

When the Great Spirit created us, he also gave us instructions or laws to live by. We promised to live by his laws so that we would remain peaceful, using them as a guideline for living happily upon that land were he created and placed us. But from the beginning he warned us that we must not be tempted by certain things by which we might lose this perfect way of life.

Of course we had advantage of many good things in this life, so by and by we broke the Creator's command by doing what he told us not to do. So he punished us by making us as we are now, with both soul and body. He said, "From now on you will have to go on your own. You will get sick, and the length of your life will be limited."

He made our bodies of two principles, good and evil. The left side is good, for it contains the heart. The right side is evil, for it has no heart. The left side is awkward

---

<sup>5</sup> 'Hotevilla, Hopi Shrine of the Covenant -- Microcosm of the World,' © Thomas E. Mails and Dan Evehema. 1995, Marlowe & Company.

but wise. The right side is clever and strong, but it lacks wisdom. There would be a constant struggle between the two sides, and by our actions we would have to decide which was stronger, the evil or the good.

We lived in good ways for many years, but eventually evil proved to be stronger. Some of the people forgot or ignored the Great Spirit's laws and once again began to do things that went against his instructions. They became materialistic, inventing many things for their own gain and not sharing things as they had in the past. This resulted in a great division, for some still wanted to follow the original instructions and live simply.

The inventive ones, clever but lacking wisdom, made many destructive things by which their lives were disrupted, and which threatened to destroy all the people. Many of the things we see today are known to have existed at that time. Finally immorality flourished. The lives of the people became corrupted with social and sexual license, which swiftly involved the Kikmongwi's wife and daughters, who rarely came home to take care of their household duties. Not only the Kikmongwi but also the high religious leaders were having the same problem. Soon the leaders and others with good hearts were worried that the life of the people was getting out of control.

The Kikmongwi gathered the high priests. They smoked and prayed for guidance toward a way to solve the corruption. Many times they gathered, until finally someone suggested that they move, find a new place, and start a new life.

## EMERGENCE INTO THE PRESENT WORLD

Now they had often heard certain thumping sounds coming from above, so they knew that someone might be living there. It was decided that this must be investigated. I describe this briefly, for the whole story would take much space.

Being gifted with wisdom, they created birds for this purpose. I will name three. Two which are known for their strength and swiftness are the kisa [hawk] and the pavowkaya [swallow]. The third was a moochnee [related to the mockingbird]. His flight is awkward, but he is known to be wise. They were each created at separate times by magic songs, tobacco smoke and prayers, from dirt and saliva, which was covered by a white cape [ova]. Each was welcomed respectfully and given instructions for his mission, should he succeed.

The first two failed to reach the top side of the sky, but the third one, moochnee, came through the opening into this world.

The new world was beautiful. The earth was green and in bloom. The bird observed all his instructions. His sense of wisdom guided him to the being he was instructed to seek. When he found him it was high noon, for the being, Maasauu, the Great Spirit, was preparing his noonday meal. Ears of corn lay beside the fire. He flew down and lit on top of his kisi [shady house] and sounded his arrival. Maasauu was not surprised by the visitor, for

by his wisdom and sense of smell he already knew someone was coming. Respectfully he welcomed him and invited him to sit down. The interview was brief and to the point. "Why are you here? Could it be important?" "Yes," said Moochnee, "I was sent here by the underworld people. They wish to come to your land and live with you, for their ways have become corrupted. With your permission they wish to move here with you and start a new life. This is why I have come." Maasauu replied bluntly, but with respect, "They may come."

With this message the bird returned to the underworld. While he was gone the Kikmongwi and the leaders had continued to pray and wait for his successful return. Upon his return with the good news of the new world and Maasauu's permission for them to come, they were overjoyed.

Now the question was how they were to get to the top, so again they smoked and prayed for guidance. At last they agreed to plant a tree that would grow to the top and serve as a pathway. They planted the seed of a shalavee [spruce tree], then they prayed and sang magic songs. The tree grew and grew until it reached the sky, but its branches were so soft and so many that it bent under the heavy earth pressure from the top, so it did not pierce the sky. They planted another seed, this one to be a louqu [pine]. It grew as they sang their magic songs. This tree was stout and strong. "Surely this one will go through," they thought. But it was unsuccessful, for its branches also bent upon contact with the solid object. Again they planted a seed. This time it was a lgakave [reed]. Since it had a pointed end it pierced the sky up into the new world.

Meanwhile all of this had been kept secret. Only proper righteous and one-hearted people were informed of the plans to leave the corrupt world. They were prepared to move out, so as soon as they knew it was successful they started to come up on the inside of the plant, resting between the joints as they worked their way up to the opening.

When they got to this world, everything was beautiful and peaceful. The land was virgin, unmolested. They were very happy. They sang and danced with joy, but their joy was short-lived, for that night the chief's daughter died suddenly. Everyone was sad and worried. People looked at one another suspiciously. An evil spell had been enacted. This caused great concern that a witch or two-hearted person might be among them.

Now the Kikmongwi had great power, which he must use to settle the concerns of his people. He made a small ball out of cornmeal, which he tossed up above the group of people. The one upon whose head it landed would be the guilty one. It landed upon the head of a girl. A quick decision was made to throw her back through the opening into the underworld. The wickedness must be gotten rid of, for they wished to live peacefully in this new land. But the witch girl cried out for mercy, telling them that on their long journey they would face many obstacles and dangers of every description, and that her services would become useful, for she had power to fight evil. She

invited the Kikmongwi to look back down into the underworld. He looked and saw his child playing happily with the other children in the underworld, where upon death we will all return. The witch girl was spared, but they left her there alone, perhaps hoping that she would perish by some unknown cause.

### THE FIRST MEETING WITH THE GREAT SPIRIT IN THIS WORLD

It was here that the Great Spirit first appeared to them on this earth, to give them the instructions by which they were to live and travel. They divided into groups, each with its selected leader. Before them he laid ears of corn of various lengths. They were each instructed to pick one ear of corn to take with them on their journey, for their subsistence and their livelihood. One by one they greedily picked out the longest and most perfect long ears until only the shortest was left. They did not realize that this was a test of wisdom. The shortest ear was picked by the humblest leader. Then the Great Spirit gave them their names and the languages by which they would be recognized. The last picker of short corn was named HOPI.

HOPI means not only to be peaceful, but to obey and have faith in the instructions of the Great Spirit, and not to distort any of his teachings for influence or power, or in any way to corrupt the HOPI way of life. Otherwise the name will be taken away.

He then gave them instructions according to which they were to migrate for a certain purpose to the four comers of the new land, leaving many footprints, rock writings, and ruins, for in time many would forget that they were all one, united by a single purpose in coming up through the reed. Now that we were on top we were each to follow our own leaders, but so long as we did not forget the instructions of the Great Spirit we would be able to **survive**. *We were now bound by a vow to live by these instructions and to complete our pattern of migration. Maasauu told us that whoever would be the first to find him would be the leader of those who were to follow, then he disappeared.*

### AN ACT OF PROPHETIC CONSEQUENCE

We migrated for many years to every comer of this continent, marking our claim as we traveled, as these markings clearly testify up to the present day. On our way we stopped for rest near the great river now known as the Colorado. We had traveled far and gained a great deal of knowledge, not forgetting our instructions. The group leader was of the Bow Clan, a great chief with wisdom. But it was here that this great chief disappeared into the dark night. After putting his family to sleep he left in search of the Earth Center, where clever, ingenious people from all nations meet to plan the future. By some means he found the place and was welcomed with respect. It was a beautiful place with all manner of good things. Good food was laid

before him by most beautiful girls. It was all very tempting.

Until today we did not know the significance of this action. It had to do with the future. By this action he caused a change to occur in the pattern of life as we near the end of the life cycle of this world, such that many of us would seek the materialistic world, trying to enjoy all the good things it has to offer before destroying ourselves. *Those gifted with the knowledge of the sacred instructions will then live very cautiously, for they will remember and have faith in these instructions, and it will be on their shoulders that the fate of the world will rest.* The people will corrupt the good ways of life, bringing about the same life as that from which we fled in the underworld. The sacred body of the female will no longer be hidden, for the shield of protection will be uplifted, an act of temptation toward sexual license, which will also be enjoyed. Most of us will be lost in all the confusion. An awareness that something extraordinary is happening will develop in most of the people, for even their leaders will be confused into polluting themselves. It will be difficult to decide whom to follow.

The Hopi knew all this would come about. All these aspects of today's life pattern were planned. So today we must stand fully on our belief in order to survive. The only course is to follow the instructions of the Great Spirit himself.

### THE MISSION OF THE TWO BROTHERS

This Bow Clan chief had two grown sons. When they learned of their father's misdeed they were very sad. Their knowledge of the teachings which they had received from him was all in order. Now they were left alone to lead their people, for the very next day their father died.

They asked their mother to permit them to carry out the order of their instructions for an event of this nature. She replied that it was up to them, for their knowledge was complete. Upon agreement, the younger brother was to continue in search of Maasauu, and to settle where he found him. There he would await the return of his older brother, who was to travel eastward toward the rising sun, where he would rest briefly. While resting, he must listen for the voice of his younger brother, who would expect him to come to his aid, for the change in the life pattern will have disrupted the way of life of his people. Under the pressure of a new ruler they will surely be wiped off the face of the earth unless he comes.

So today we are still standing firmly on the Great Spirit's instructions. We will continue to look and pray toward the East for his prompt return. The younger brother warned the Elder that the land and the people would change. "But do not let your heart be troubled," he said, "for you will find us. Many will turn away from the life plan of Maasauu, but a few of us who are true to his teachings will remain in our dwellings. The ancient character of our heads, the shape of our houses, the layout of our villages, and the type of land upon which

our village stands, and our way of life. All will be in order, by which you will find us."

Before the first people had begun their migrations the people named Hopi were given a set of stone tablets. Into these tablets the Great Spirit inscribed the laws by which the Hopi were to travel and live the good way of life, the peaceful way. They also contained a warning that the Hopi must beware, for in time they would be influenced by wicked people to forsake the life plan of Maasauu. It would not be easy to stand up against this, for it would involve many good things that would tempt many good people to forsake these laws. The Hopi would be led into a most difficult position. The stones contain instructions to be followed in such a case.

The older brother was to take one of the stone tablets with him to the rising sun, and bring it back with him when he hears the desperate call for aid. His brother will be in a state of hopelessness and despair. His people may have forsaken the teachings, no longer respecting their Elders, and even turning upon their Elders to destroy their way of life. The stone tablets will be the final acknowledgment of their true identity and brotherhood. Their mother is Sun Clan. They are the children of the Sun.

So it must be a Hopi who traveled from here to the rising sun and is waiting someplace. Therefore it is only the Hopi that still have this world rotating properly, and it is the Hopi who must be purified if this world is to be saved. No other person anyplace will accomplish this.

The older brother had to travel fast on his journey, for there was not much time, so the horse was created for him. The younger brother and his people continued on in search of Maasauu.

On their way they came to a land that looked fertile and warm. Here they marked their clan symbols on the rock to claim the land. This was done by the Fire Clan, the Spider Clan, and the Snake Clan. This place is now called Moencopi. They did not settle there at that time.

While the people were migrating, Maasauu was waiting for the first ones to arrive. In those days he used to take walks near the place where he lived, carrying a bunch of violet flowers [dukyarn-see] in his belt. One day he lost them along the way. When he went to look for them he found that they had been picked up by the Homytoad Woman. When he asked her for the flowers she refused to give them back, but instead gave him her promise that she would help him in time of need. "I have a metal helmet," she told him, (possibly meaning that certain people with metal helmets would help the Hopi when they get into difficulty). Often Maasauu would walk about a half mile north of his du-pa-cha (a type of temporary house) to a place where there lay a long rock which formed a natural shelter, which he must have picked as the place where he and the first people would find each other. While waiting there he would amuse himself by playing a game to test his skill, the name of which (Naduwonpi-kya) was to play an important part later on in the life of the Hopi, for it was here that the knowledge and wisdom of the first people was to be

tested. Until recent times children used to play a similar game there, something like hide-and-seek. One person would hide, then signal by tapping on the rock, which would transmit the sound in a peculiar way so that the others would not tell exactly where the tapping was coming from. (Some years ago this rock was destroyed by government road builders.) It was here that they found Maasauu waiting.

#### THE MEETING WITH MAASAUU NEAR ORAIBI

Before the migrations began Maasauu had let it be known, though perhaps not by direct instructions, that whoever would find him first would be the leader there. Later it became clear that this was a procedure by which their true character would be specified. When they found him the people gathered and sat down with him to talk. The first thing they wanted to know was where he lived. He replied that he lived just north of there at a place called Oraibi. For a certain reason he did not name it fully. The full name is Sip-Oraibi, meaning something that has been solidified, referring to the fact that this is the place where the earth was made solid;

They asked permission to live there with him. He did not answer directly, for within them he saw evil. "It's up to you," he said. "I have nothing here. My life is simple. All I have is my planting stick and my corn. If you are willing to live as I do, and follow my instructions, the life plan which I shall give you, you may live here with me and take care of the land. Then you shall have a long, happy, fruitful life."

Then they asked him whether he would be their leader, thinking that thus they would be assured a peaceful life. "No," he replied, "the one who led you here will be the leader until you fulfill your pattern of life" (for he saw into their hearts and knew that they still had many selfish desires). "After that I will be the leader, but not before, for I am the first and I shall be the last." Having left all the instructions with them, he disappeared.

#### THE FOUNDING OF ORAIBI VILLAGE

The village of Oraibi was settled and built in accordance with the instructions of the Great Spirit. The Bow Clan chief was the father of the ceremonial order. They remained under the leadership of the Bow Clan for some time, perhaps until corruptions set in. As you recall, the Bow Clan chief of the past had contaminated his standing by taking part in the changing of the life pattern.

Later the Bear Clan took over. This might have been because the bear is strong and mighty. There may have been other reasons too, such as a prophecy which told that a bear, sleeping somewhere in the northern part of what is now called Europe, would awaken at a certain time and walk to the northern part of this country, where he would wait. This group is called Bear Clan because they came across a dead bear at the place of the shield



symbol. Most of the important people claimed to be of the Bear Clan, including the Bluebird and Spider Clan people.

The vow which we made with the Great Spirit obligated us to follow His way of life. He gave the land to us to use and care for through our ceremonial duties. He instructed us and showed us the road plan by which we must govern our lives. We wrote this pattern on a rock so that we would always be reminded to follow the straight road. The Hopi must not drift away from this road or He will take this land away from us. This is the warning given to us by Maasau'u.

Oraibi village was settled firmly. Migrating people were now gathering there and asking to be admitted into the village. The Kikmongwi and the high priests would always consider their request and base their judgment upon their character and wisdom. Those who showed signs of boastfulness were turned away and told to go to the south mesas where their kind of people lived. Only good people, humble and sincere in their prayers, were admitted.

One of these groups was the Coyote Clan. They were coming from Sh-got-kee (Si-aht-ki), close to Walpi. There were several reasons they were pointed out as bad people, but they were clever in a way. At first they were not allowed to join the village. But when they made their fourth request they were accepted according to the custom, and they were admitted with the agreement that they act as a protection, and that in time of troubles they had to support and help the spokesman. But they were warned to be cautious. Although, the devout never torture to the end. And that is the way we had it with all the clans, because on the way most of us want to cheat or deceive the leaders to get glory or fame; which leads us to the point of polkuting our way and to shake our beliefs.

The last group that was admitted to Oraibi was the Grey Eagle Clan. As they finished their migration, they first settled in what today is called New Mexico. Because they were people who like to make wars, and trouble makers they were, they were chased away by the Pueblo Indians there. As they came to this area, they settled at Mishongovi on Second Mesa, with the condition that they would not start a quarrel or conflict. If they break this promise, they should leave without resistance. So, they started another conflict and they left as promised. After that they came to Oraibi and asked to be admitted there. After several attempts they were allowed to come in under the same promise that they had to give to the other village, that they would move voluntarily if they started restlessness or broke their promise. In accordance with this agreement, the leader of the Village Mishongovi would consider re-accepting them on Second Mesa, or to send them back to New Mexico where the Pueblo Indians could do with them what they think is right.

Later, as we were forced to leave the Village Oraibi, and we started to settle in Hotvela, they came with us, with the same agreement. That is still in effect today. Again they started restlessness and they are now

obligated to leave. They are the seed of all the destruction in our village. They betrayed the Hopi Nation because they bow before the ones that come with nice words, and through that they get benefits and advantages. For them, there are just two ways: the way of the Great Spirit or the way of Bahanna. They are obligated to go to Mishongovi as agreed. The people over there wait for them, but they don't have the courage to do what they promised. And they hide themselves cowardly behind the man-made law of Bahanna.

Among the ceremonies of each group the prayer for rain was important in order for the crops to grow and produce an abundance of food. The people depended on this for their livelihood. Boastful people were not admitted so that the prayers would not be polluted.

Oraibi was now firmly established. The pattern of the religious order was established. Cycle by cycle we paid respect to our Mother Earth, our Father Sun, the Great Spirit, and all things through our ceremonies. We were happy for. we were united as one.

## ARRIVAL OF ANOTHER RACE FORETOLD

Time passed on, people passed on, and the prophecies of things to come were passed from mouth to mouth. The stone tablets and the rock writing of the life plan were often reviewed by the Elders. Fearfully they waited as they retold the prophecy that one day another race of people would appear in their midst and claim our land as his own. He would try to change our pattern of life. He would have "a sweet tongue" or a "fork tongue" and many good things by which we would be tempted. He would use force in an attempt to trap us into using weapons, but we must not fall for this trick, for then we ourselves would be brought to our knees, from which we might not be able to rise. Nor must we ever raise our hand against any nation. We now call these people Bahanna.

## THE FORCES OF PURIFICATION

We have teachings and prophecies informing us that we must be alert for the signs and omens which will come about to give us courage and strength to stand on our beliefs. Blood will flow. Our hair and our clothing will be scattered upon the earth. Nature will speak to us with its mighty breath of wind. There will be earthquakes and floods causing great disasters, changes in the seasons and in the weather, disappearance of wildlife, and famine in different forms. There will be gradual corruption and confusion among the leaders and the people all over the world, and wars will come about like powerful winds. All of this has been planned from the beginning of creation.

We will have three people standing behind us, ready to fulfill our prophecies when we get into hopeless difficulties: the Meha Symbol (which refers to a plant that has a long root, milky sap, grows back when cut off, and has a flower shaped like a swastika, symbolizing the four great forces of nature in motion), the Sun Symbol, and the Red Symbol. Bahanna's intrusion into the Hopi

way of life will set the **Meha** symbol in motion, so that the four great forces of nature (the four directions, the controlling forces, the original force) which will rock the world into war. When this happens we will know that our **prophecies** are coming true. We will gather strength and **stand** firm.

This great movement will **fall**, but because its **subsistence** is milk, and because it is controlled by the four forces of nature, it will rise again to put the world in motion, creating another war, in which both the **Meha** and the Sun Symbol will be at work. Then it will rest in order to **rise** a third time. Our prophecy foretells that the third event will be the decisive one. Our road plan foretells the outcome.

**This** sacred writing speaks the word of the Great Spirit. It could mean the mysterious life seed with two principle<sup>6</sup> of tomorrow, indicating one, inside of which is two. The third and last, which will it bring forth, purification or destruction?

The third event will depend upon the Red Symbol, which will take command, setting the four forces of nature (**Meha**) in motion for the benefit of the Sun. When he sets these forces in motion the whole world will shake and turn red and turn against the people who are hindering the Hopi cultural life. To all these people Purification Day will come. Humble people will run to him in search of a new **world**, and the equality that has been denied them. He will come unmercifully. His people will cover the Earth like red ants. We must not go outside to watch. We **must** stay in our houses. He will come and gather the wicked people who are hindering the red people who were here first. He will be looking for someone whom he will recognize by his **way** of life, or by **his head** (the special Hopi haircut) or by the shape of his village and his dwellings. He is the only one who will purify **us**.

The Purifier, commanded by the Red Symbol, with the help of the Sun and the **Meha**, will weed out the wicked who have disturbed the way of life of the Hopi, the true way of life on Earth. The wicked will be beheaded and will speak **no** more. This will be the Purification for all righteous people, the Earth, and all living things on Earth. The ills of the earth will be cured. Mother Earth will bloom again and all people will unite into peace and harmony for a long time to come.

But if this does not materialize, the Hopi traditional identity will vanish due to pressure from Bahanna. Through the whiteman's influence, his religions, and the disappearance of our sacred land, the Hopi will be doomed. This is the Universal Plan, speaking through the Great Spirit since the dawn of time.

With **this** in mind, **I** a<sup>6</sup> a Hopi do not make wars against any country, because if **I do**, the Purifier will find out and punish me for fighting. And since **I** am Hopi, I am not sending my children across the ocean to fight. If they want to that<sup>6</sup> up to them, but they will no longer be Hopi if they do.

Since I am Sun Clan, and the Sun is the father of all living things, I love my children. If **they** realize what I am talking about they must help me save this world.

The Hopi have been placed on this side of the Earth to take care of the land through their ceremonial duties, just as other races of people have been placed elsewhere around the Earth to take care of Her in their own ways. Together, we hold the world in balance, revolving properly. If the Hopi nation vanishes, the motion of the Earth will become eccentric, the water will **swallow** the land, the people will perish, and the ants will inherit the Earth. Only a brother and a sister may **be left to start** a new life.

## THE FAITHFUL HOPI MEET THEIR TEST

Bahanna came with great ambition and generosity, eagerly offering his hand to help 'improve' our way of life, establishing schools to teach us the 'better ways' of his life. He offered **us his** medicine and health practices, saying that this would help us live longer. He offered to help **us** mark our boundary, claiming that in that way we would have more land. In all the villages we rejected his offer. He tried many ways to induce us, but failed to make us submit to his wishes, for we were all one unity at that time, believer<sup>6</sup> in the instructions of Maasauu.

His next attempt was fear. He formed a police force consisting partly of certain people who had been tempted by his offers and given weapons. He threatened to arrest us and put us in prison, but we still stood firm. The threats of arrest and imprisonment were put into action. Villagers panicked and weaker people began to submit. In Oraibi, our village leadership fell when Lololma (Bear Clan) made an agreement with the United States Government.

We who still had faith in Maasauu, including the main priests of the religious orders, gathered together, rejecting the Kikmongwi's request to submit. We sat down together and smoked and prayed that we would be brave enough to take our stand. We took out our stone tablet and studied it in every detail. We carefully reviewed the road plan written on the rock near our village. This is the plan we must always follow, for it is in order and complete. We recognized that the Fire Clan (meaning my father) Yukioma niust lead, for his symbol, Maasauu, stands to the right of the reed as he faces **out**.<sup>6</sup> We also interpreted that since our way of life had been corrupted we must move to a new place where we would be able to follow the road without interference and continue our ceremonial duties for all beings.

We smoked and prayed again and reconsidered that this village, Oraibi, is our mother **village**. All our sacred shrines are rooted here **and** must not be left unattended. We knew that the road would be hard with many obstacles. We knew that we would still be troubled by

<sup>6</sup> This refers to the 'Life Plan Petroglyph'. See page 5.

the newcomer, and that we must still face all the tests of weakness, so we agreed to stay.

The trouble commenced its course. The Government wanted all of the Hopi children to be put into schools. They said it would do us good, but we knew that this 'good' would only be on the surface, and that what was under it would destroy the Hopi cultural life. Maybe they thought that with an education the children might be able to help the old people, but we knew this would not be so, because they would learn to think as white men, so they would never help the old people. Instead they would be indoctrinated and encouraged to turn against us, as they are actually doing today. So in order to be good according to the Great Spirit's instructions we refused to put our children into the schools.

So almost every week they would send policemen, many of them. They would surround the village and hunt for the children of school age. We could not be happy because we were expecting trouble every day. Fathers who refused to cooperate were arrested and imprisoned. Inhuman acts were imposed upon us: starvation, insults and humiliation to force us into submission. Still, over half of the clan leaders and religious society leaders refused to accept anything from the Government. Because of this we were mocked and treated as outcasts by those who had already submitted. Finally they decided to do something about us because we were keeping them from getting certain favors from the Government.

This was when Lololma's successor, Tawaquaptewa, became chief of Oraibi. It was under his leadership that the sad event, the eviction of the faithful Hopi from Oraibi, was touched off. Since we 'Hostiles,' as we were called by the missionaries and Government workers, refused to follow his wishes and accept the White man's way of life, he decided to evict us bodily. He figured that without our interference he would be able to take advantage of the good things offered by Bahanna.

### THE FAITHFUL HOPI EVICTED FROM ORAIBI

On September 7, 1906, his followers, commanded by Chief Tewaquaptewa himself, entered the house where we were discussing prophecies and threw us out. We did not resist until rifles and other weapons were shown and they began beating us. Then we resisted only to the extent of defending ourselves from injury. I was "killed," and bleeding, my blood flowed into Mother Earth, a prophetic sign that the Purifier was coming in seven days and that we should move out of Oraibi. When I came back to life, all my people were gathered to go. My father, Yukioma, was selected to be the leader. The women and children, with a few belongings on their backs, a little food, and no shoes, were prepared to leave. Some tried to go back to their houses to get their valuables and some extra food, but they were turned back. (In 'Book of the Hopi' it is said we were allowed to go back and get some belongings, but this is not true. That book is not accurate.) After we had left we learned that our houses had been looted and

that horses had been turned loose in our fields and had eaten our crops, which were just ready for harvest.

Thus we had to migrate once again to find a new home, leaving behind a corrupt world of confusion. We sought to start a new life, carry on our ceremonial cycles, and preserve our way of life without interference, but now we know that this was a dead dream, for the interference has continued right up to the present day.

### THE FOUNDING OF HOTVELA VILLAGE

The village of Hotvela was settled for one purpose, to stand firmly on the Great Spirit's instructions and fulfill the prophecies to the end. It was established by good people, one-hearted people who were actually living these instructions. Water was plentiful, and so was wood, from which we built temporary shelters in which we were to survive the cold winter with very few blankets. Food was scarce, but we managed to live from the land by hunting game and picking greens. We were united into oneness, but it would again be split into two due to extreme pressure from the outside.

### RENEWED ATTACKS

Hardly had our footprints faded away in Oraibi, when early one morning we found ourselves surrounded by Government troops. All the people, including the children, were ordered to march six miles to a place below Oraibi. From there all the men were marched over forty miles to the U.S. Government agency at Kearns Canyon, where they were imprisoned for about a year and one half for not accepting the generous offer of education for our children, among other things.

The first thing they ordered us to do was to sign papers. We refused. Then they locked us inside a building without food and with very little water for several days until we were very hungry. Again they tried to induce us to sign papers, promising to feed us and let us go, but again we refused. They tried other tricks to make us sign, but each time we refused. Finally they took us to a blacksmith shop, where they riveted chains to our legs with loops and hooks, and fastened us together in pairs. In this way we were forced to work on a road gang for long periods working dangerously with dynamite on the steep rocky cliffs near the agency. That road is now the foundation of a highway still in use today.

At night we were fastened together in groups of six by means of long chains. To add to our torture, soap was added to our food, which made us very sick. When one man had to go to the outhouse all six had to go. All this time the possibility of signing certain papers was left open to those who might weaken. During this period my father, Yukioma, was being held somewhere else, so I was acting as leader.

While we were in prison, only the women and children, and maybe a few old men, were left out here. They had very little food, but as if by a miracle, there happened to be a lot of rabbits and other wild game, so on

that meat diet they were able to survive the hard winter. It was very hard while the men were away. The old people used to talk about it. The women had to gather the wood themselves. My mother used to tell me how they would form hunting parties and get the dogs to help. We had a small flock of sheep which they tended while we were away. During the growing season they planted the crops, took care of the fields, and did all the work that the men would normally do, in order to survive.

## THE DISRUPTION CONTINUES TODAY

During this period a group under the leadership of Kawonumtewa (Sand Clan), fearing even worse pressure from the government, returned to Oraibi to follow Tewaquaptewa and accept the white man's way, but they were rejected and driven out. They settled about two miles from Hotvela, where they founded the village of Bacobi. Unable to make out independently, they asked the government agency for help. The agency happily obliged with such things as housing materials. Now they almost entirely accept the white man's way, along with his religion. According to the Great Spirit's law they are now landless. Their only assets are their dwellings. But it is through them that the agency obtained token permission to build a school on Hotvela land, and with the agency's backing they have committed land grabs against the Hotvela people. It is also through them that the government has built a water tower on Hotvela land, which supplies running water to the school and to Bacobi village, while depleting the natural water supply of the Hotvela people. Most of the people in Hotvela refuse to use the water from this tower. Much of the trouble caused by the Bacobi people still exists today. I can **recall** much more that I hope will come to light.

At the present time we face the danger that we might lose our land entirely. Through the influence of the United States government, some people of Hopi ancestry have organized what they call the Hopi Tribal Council, patterned according to a plan devised by the government, for the purpose of negotiating directly with the government and with private businesses. They claim to act in the interests of the Hopi people, despite the fact that they ignore the existing traditional leaders, and represent only a small minority of the People of Hopi blood. Large areas of our land have been leased, and this group is now accepting compensation from the Indian Claims **Commission** for the use of **44,000,000** acres of Hopi land. We have protested all these moves, but to no avail.

Now this Tribal Council was formed illegally, even according to white man's laws. We traditional leaders have disapproved and protested from the start. In spite of this they have been organized and recognized by the United States government for the purpose of disguising its wrong-doings to the outside world. We do not have representatives in this organization, nor are we legally subject to their regulations and programs. We Hopi are an independent sovereign nation, by the law of the Great Spirit, but the United States government does not want to

recognize the aboriginal leaders of this land. Instead, he recognizes only **what** he himself has created out of today's children in order to carry out his scheme to claim all of our land.

Because of this, we now face the great threat of all, the actual loss of our cornfields and gardens, our animals and wild game, and our natural water supply, which would put an end to the Hopi way of life. At the urging of the Department of the Interior of the United States, the **Tribal** Council has **signed** several leases with an outside private enterprise, the Peabody Coal Company, allowing them to explore our land for coal deposits, and to strip-mine the sacred mesas, selling the coal to several large power plants. This is part of a project intended to bring heavy industry into our area against our wishes. We know that this will pollute the fields and grazing lands and drive out the wildlife. Great quantities of water will be pumped from beneath our desert land and used to push coal through a pipe to a power plant in another state (Nevada). The loss of this water will affect our farms as well as the grazing areas of the animals. It also threatens our sacred **springs**, our **only** natural source of water, which we have depended upon for centuries.

We Hopi knew all this would come about, because this is the Universal Plan. It was planned by the Great Spirit and the Creator that when the white man came he would offer us many things. If we were to accept those offers from his government, that would be the doom of the Hopi nation. Hopi is the bloodline of this continent, as others are the bloodline of other continents. So if Hopi is doomed, the whole world will be destroyed. This we know, because this same thing happened in the other world. So if we want to survive, we should go back to the way we lived in the beginning, the peaceful way, and accept everything the Creator has provided for us to follow.

White man's laws are many, but mine is one. White man's laws are all stacked up. So many people have made the rules, and many of them are made every day. But my law is only the Creator's, just one. And no man-made law must I follow, because it is ever-changing, and will doom my people.

We know that when the time comes, the Hopi will be reduced to maybe one person, two person, three persons. If he can withstand the pressure from the people who are against the tradition, the world might survive from destruction. We are at the stage where I must stand alone, free from impure elements. I must continue to lead my people on the road the Great Spirit made for us to travel. I do not disregard anyone. All who are faithful and confident in the Great Spirit way are **at** liberty to follow the same road. We will meet many obstacles along the way. The peaceful way of life can be **accomplished** only by people with strong courage, and by the purification of all living things. Mother Earth's ills must be **e d**.

As we say, the Hopi are the first people created. They must cure the ills of their own bloodline so

everything will become peaceful naturally, by the will of the Creator. He will cure the world. But right now Hopi is being hurt. To us this is a sign that the world is in trouble. All over the world the confused people have been fighting, and it will get worse. It is only purification of the Hopi that will settle the problems here on this Earth. We didn't suffer all this hardship and punishment for nothing. We live by these prophecies and teachings, and no matter what happens, we will not buckle down under any pressure from anybody.

We know certain people are commissioned to bring about the Purification. It is the Universal Plan from the beginning of creation, and we are looking up to them to bring purification to us. It is in the rock writings throughout the world, on different continents. We will come together if people all over the world know about it. So we urge you to spread this word around so people will know about it, and the appointed ones will hurry up with their task, to purify the Hopi and get rid of those who are hindering our way of life.

I have spoken. I wish this message to travel to all comers of this land and across the great waters, where people of understanding may consider these words of wisdom and knowledge. This I want. For people may have different opinions about some things, but because of the nature of the beliefs upon which this Hopi life is based, I expect that at least one will agree, maybe even two. If three *agree* it will be worth manyfold.

I am forever looking and praying eastward to the rising sun for my true white brother to come and purify the

Hopi. My father, Yukioma, used to tell me that I would be the one to take over as leader at this time, because I belong to the Sun Clan the father of all the people on the Earth. I was told that I must not give in, because I am the first. The Sun is the father of all living things from the first creation. And if I am done, the Sun Clan then there will be no living thing left on the Earth. So I have stood fast. I hope you will understand what I am trying to tell you.

I am the Sun, the father. With my warmth all things are created. You are my children and I am very concerned about you. I hold you to protect you from harm, but my heart is sad to see you leaving my protecting arms and destroying yourselves. From the breast of your mother, the Earth, you receive your nourishment, but she is too dangerously ill to give you pure food. What will it be? Will you lift your father's heart? Will you cure your mother's ills? Or will you forsake us and leave us with sadness to be weathered away? I don't want this world to be destroyed. If this world is saved, you all will be saved and whoever has stood fast will complete this plan with us, so that we will all be happy in the Peaceful Way.

People everywhere must give Hopi their most serious consideration, our prophecies, our teachings, and our ceremonial duties, for if Hopi fails, it will trigger the destruction of the world and all mankind. I have spoken through the mouth of the Creator. May the Great Spirit guide you on the right path.

## Excerpt from The *Book of the Hopi*

An early version of Hopi Prophecy can be found in *The Book of the Hopi* (1963) by Frank Waters. Sentiment about *The Book of the Hopi* is mixed at best in the village of Hotevilla, the last bastion of Traditional Hopi people. Perhaps this is because there were only a few Traditionals from Hotevilla among the 30 Elders who provided material to Waters. The rest were mostly from Oraibi, where "Progressives" violently drove out the "Traditionals" in 1906 (see Grandfather Dan Katchongva's account on page 19). Grandfather Katchongva, who was among Waters' sources, later denounced *The Book of the Hopi*, saying "That book is not accurate." One specific criticism was the account of the driving out of traditionals from Oraibi which suggests they were allowed to go back into their homes to gather belongings. Many of the Hotevilla traditionals have stated this is not true. If you read *The Book of the Hopi*, I recommend also reading *Pumpkin Seed Point*, Waters' account of the extraordinary circumstances which surrounded the research for *The Book of the Hopi*, including some fascinating material about Waters' early interaction with Katchongva.

Nonetheless the book does contain a rich collection of material, including a version of a prophecy concerning the "Blue Star Kachina" and the Purification it will herald. Interestingly, when I asked Hotevilla traditionals about this prophecy, they were unaware of it, and said they thought it represented a misunderstanding of the Blue Star Kachina. It may be useful to recall that the Hopi split up their prophecies among the various Kivas (ceremonial chambers, also referring to a religious societies) and kept them secret for hundreds of years. They only compared their prophecies in 1949. For whatever it is worth, here is the version of Hopi Prophecy given in *The Book of the Hopi*:

---

The end of all Hopi ceremonialism will come when a *kachina* removes his mask during a dance in the plaza before uninitiated children. For a while there will be no more ceremonies, no more faith. Then Oraibi will be rejuvenated with its faith and ceremonies, marking the start of a new cycle of Hopi Life.

World War III will be started by those peoples who first received the light [the divine wisdom or intelligence] in the other old countries [India, China, Egypt, Palestine, Africa].

The United States will be destroyed, land and people, by atomic bombs and radioactivity. Only the Hopis and their homeland will be preserved as an oasis to which refugees will flee. Bomb shelters are a fallacy. "It is only materialistic people who seek to make shelters. Those who are at peace in their hearts already are in the great shelter of life. There is no shelter for evil. Those who take no part in the making of world division by ideology are ready to resume life in another world, be they of the Black, White, Red, or Yellow race. They are all one, brothers."

The war will be "a spiritual conflict with material matters. Material matters will be destroyed by spiritual beings who will remain to create one world and one nation under one power, that of the Creator."

That time is not far off. It will come when the Saquasohuh [Blue Star] Kachina dances in the plaza. He represents a blue star, far off and yet invisible, which will make its appearance soon. The time is also foretold by a song sung during the Wúwuchim ceremony. It was sung in 1914 just before World War I, and again in 1940 before World War II, describing the disunity, corruption, and hatred contaminating Hopi rituals, which were followed by the same evils spreading over the world. This same song was sung in 1961 during the Wúwuchim ceremony.

The Emergence to the future Fifth World has begun. It is being made by the humble people of little nations, tribes, and racial minorities. "You can read this in the earth itself. Plant forms from previous worlds are beginning to spring up as seeds. This could start a new study of botany if people were wise enough to read them. The same kinds of seeds are being planted in the sky as stars. The same kinds of seeds are being planted in our hearts. All these are the same, depending how you look at them. That is what makes the Emergence to the next, Fifth World.

"These comprise the nine most important prophecies of the Hopis, connected with the creation of the nine worlds: the three previous worlds on which we have lived, the present Fourth World, the future three worlds we have yet to experience, and the worlds of Taiowa, the Creator, and his nephew, Sótuknang."

## Excerpts from the Hopi Newsletter *Techqua Ikachi*

The following prophecies are extracted from the newsletter *Techqua Ikachi* ("Land and Life") which was published clandestinely by the traditional elders of Hotevilla 45 times between 1975 and 1986. The newsletters were produced primarily for Hopis themselves; the traditional elders hoped they could interest a new generation of westernized Hopi children in the traditions of their people. The newsletters, which are a rich source of a wide variety of information, are reprinted in no discernible order in *Hotevilla: Hopi Shrine of the Covenant, Microcosm of the World, 1995*, Thomas Mails and Dan Evehema, Marlow & Company. The prophecies from these newsletters have been extracted and reproduced in another book by Mails: *The Hopi Survival Kit, 1997*, Penguin Arkana. (While Hopi traditionals endorse *Hotevilla*, they did not authorize *The Hopi Survival Kit* and say it is inaccurate.) Electronic versions of *Techqua Ikachi* newsletters (complete with the original masthead and pictures) can be found on the internet at:  
[http://www.hinduismtoday.kauai.hi.us/ashram/Resources/Hopi/techqua\\_ikachi.html](http://www.hinduismtoday.kauai.hi.us/ashram/Resources/Hopi/techqua_ikachi.html)

---

### PREVIOUS WORLDS, PRESENT TIMES, AND DECISIONS FOR THE FUTURE

The beginning of Human history has always been a disputed question. So it has been with the origin of the Hopi. It is a question we need not dispute, for it might bring confusion, knowing that other cultures are closely related to what our ancient fathers passed down to us long ago.

We believe their testimonies are clearly explained, for their knowledge and wisdom describes the origin of time, a time when man made his first mistake in the previous worlds. We look upon our ancient teachings as a guideline used in order to avoid a downfall for our mistakes. We have learned that through our conduct we can accomplish good and bad deeds. The old ones say that we have gone through at least three world catastrophes and each world was destroyed by the same error in man.

Suppose a catastrophe happened today or tomorrow, what would you do or say?

The story we are about to tell may only be a legendary tale, but one does not have to look very far to find that this story is real. In the past our ancient ones lived at a time when people were at a highly civilized stage, greed and corruption were at their peak of controlling the so-called "lesser grade of man." Leaders and priests were branded with a disgusting evil, it was a time when people disregarded the Great Laws. People did as they pleased, they ignored the advice of their leaders. This was a time of sorrow and frustration, for the leaders loved and cared for the people as children. They warned them of the danger and tried many times to guide them on to the right road and repent. There were many violent signs in the sky and earth given by nature. This was ignored with laughter and answered that these things were only seen by lunatics who wanted to create an obstacle of fear for those seeking pleasure and wealth.

Immorality and the greed for material gain continued to flourish, disrupting life for those who wished to live in peace according to the laws of the Creator.

The Great Spirit had been watching the hearts of all Humans. Failed by His warning to the people, He too was frustrated, sad, and felt betrayed, for His laws and instructions had been forsaken. It hurt Him to think that His own creation had turned against Him. He called together His servants of God, the controllers of the Earth and Universe. "What will it be?" cried the Creator sadly. "My children on Earth have betrayed the sacred vows they made with us. They now live beyond all bounds, ignoring all advice from their leader to correct themselves and get on the rightful path." The Gods were grieved, their hearts filled with sorrow and compassion for the wickedness of man but they could only admit to the wrongs committed by the people.

"The time has come! We will punish them and m-people the Earth with Humans of good hearts!" They cried and cried. The Great Judgment began the sky darkened the great wind began to howl, birds and animals were first to sense the danger of truth. All creatures fled in search of refuge, to the mountains and even to the cities. The people laughed in wonder at the strange behavior of the animals. The Earth and sky grew darker, the wind grew stronger and the God of lightning lit the sky, sounding a loud thunder call. The twin warrior Gods at each of the Earths axis released the great water serpents, and cracked the Earth releasing the fires beneath the crust. Lightning, thunder, wind, and hail struck the people, and in awe they watched the stone of their houses and great temples crumble, falling on top of them. People panicked through the ruined streets, some ran to the priests, begging, "Oh, great ones-please help save us, we will reform!"

"We have warned you many times," they replied loudly, "Nothing can be done now, the time has come for you to depart, but **you all** deserve one last thing: take your riches and your wealth and go down!"

The scenes of the catastrophe were full of a frightening terror. The streets were strewn with ruin, corpses killed by falling debris or fear. It was not over-Nature opened up with its full force and the Earth swallowed everything in its wake.

The catastrophe ended. The Creator's plan had been fulfilled. Spider-Woman, God of Wisdom and Knowledge, had withdrawn all her power. Those still alive had lost all reasoning and senselessly crept on all fours over hills and valleys. **Some** stumbled into cracks in the Earth, though still alive, their spirit was dead. They attacked each other and ate each other like animals. After many moons the water cooled and reseeded the Earth. The brightness returned and the Earth was m-peopled with righteous ones who were saved for the purpose of carrying on the Creator's plan,

This story is a glimpse into the past. The future? What do you think? Do you want to be banished from the Earth, by the same patterns as our ancient ones? We hope not, but we are now at that time period **related...maybe** there is a way of correcting our faults. There must be a way!!!

- - -

The time will come when from the earth will arise a mystic fog which will dilute the minds and hearts of all people. Their guidelines of wisdom and knowledge will falter, the Great Laws of our Creator will dissolve in the minds of people. Children will be out of control and will no longer obey the leaders, immorality and the competitive war of greed will flourish.

- - -

When the end is near, we will see a halo of mist around the heavenly bodies, Four times it will appear around the sun as a warning that we must reform, telling us that people of all colors must unite and arise for survival, and that we must uncover the causes of our dilemmas. Unless man made weapons are used to strike first, peace will then come.

- - -

So the time will come when we-will experience late springs **and early** frosts, this will be the sign of the returning Ice Age.

- - -

Today, once again, the world is facing a new crisis. This is a war of retaliation against terrorism. A war to save the innocent and to punish the guilty. But who is innocent and who is guilty? Well, this depends on how you look at it. Life would be good if all men were innocent. Let us focus on minorities and figure who is guilty. Minorities such as the

Native people of both North and South America and elsewhere. We believe militarism is born out of injustice, poverty and ignorance where absolute governments refuse to hear the grievances of minorities or to help in resolving problems. So the people resort to **violence, demonstrations** and even terrorism or other recourse **when they** see no other way to be heard. What can we do when our world leaders and the people are acting like **fools** in attempts to solve the problems confronting us. Once again we will quote the prophecy of our elders. We hope it will interest you so that you will be more aware of it as it has been happening for some time.

According to prophecy, the day will come when people in high places will be hunted, and vice-versa, the lowly **hunters** will be hunted. This will get out of control. The hunting will gather strength and spread far and wide. This situation might even erupt on our land. Finally, this will lead us to the Biblical version of Armageddon (the Hopi version is closely related). A final decisive battle between good and evil. This will occur under one God or Chief. They dare say (the prophets) we will speak one language and that this will happen in Hopiland, in the village of Oraibi. This will be where the new life plan will be drawn, in the pattern and cycle of religion. Here also a final decision will be made for the wicked. They will be beheaded and speak no more. If this does not materialize there will be a total destruction through the acts of man or nature. Then new life will begin from a girl and a boy. This is a frightening prophecy and will not be supported by many.

It is in the prophecies of the Hopi that in a case like this the Navajo may help our cause. Also the **Bahannas** or the Paiute Tribe may help. We doubt that the U.S. Government will easily concede our sovereignty. If possible both Hopi and Navajo traditional would like separation from those who want to be assimilated. Both tribes could thereby retain their identity and lay the foundation for a self respecting community.

- - -

There are two water serpents, one at each pole with a warrior sitting on his head and tail. These command nature to warn us by her activities that time is getting short and we must correct ourselves. If we refuse to heed these warnings, the warriors **will** let go of the serpents, they will rise up, and all will perish.

- - -

We are much concerned about the climate. **No** one seems to be able to predict the **weather accurately from** day to day. However, we know according to our time markers that it is past due for certain seeds to be **planted** at their proper time. This spring we are reluctant to plant due to the late snow and cold weather. Once more maybe our ancient prophecy is right, that one day we will plant wearing finger sacks (gloves) clearing away snow with our feet before planting. The summers will become shorter



for maturing the corn for harvesting. The result is anybody's guess

The question is, will this occur the world over?? This would depend on the geographical areas. In the regions with different climates, things will happen in different ways. For instance, tropical land could become a land of ice, and the Arctic region could become Tropical. This may occur during a pole shift according to Bahannas concept. But this need not happen if we, the people, get our leaders to do something about the harmful things being done to the environment.

It is said that if the future generations find out through records that we did nothing to preserve the good ways, they will pull and box our ears, and even throw us from our houses into the streets. This suffering will be of our own making. The lack of peace in our own spiritual being could trigger the revolution.

Our White brother might come and find we have forsaken the sacred laws and instructions. Then he will whip us with our mercy. Either this, or nature herself will take over.

---

Let us take a look into the future through the eyes of our prophets. They say that along the way, the industrialized world will have certain problems. Throughout the world people will be uncomfortable because of the changing times. The worldly woes people will be going through. People will have to make adjustments to fit themselves into new life styles and environments.

Industrialized nations will become careless in getting more of the resources they need out of the earth, oil, coal, etc.... Believing all these things will last forever. Soon natural resources will be depleted. Fuel shortages will occur, industrial machinery will come to a standstill. The machinery used for planting harvesting and transport will become useless. Supermarket shelves will become empty of farm produce. The farmers and those who grow their own food will not sell their produce. Money will become worthless. The white man (Bahanna) with all his intelligence and technology will not be able to repair the damage.

Now let us review our knowledge briefly, the centuries old prophecies which warn us what would happen when we forget the principles of right and wrong in our behavior. We will see extraordinary events in Nature and Earth, including mankind: Modern man looks upon old wisdom and knowledge as dead, useless and no longer respected.

Modern man depends on the money system and no longer on Mother Earth for food. According to prophecy when this happens Mother Earth will hide the nourishment which

she provides because of the view that ancient food is poor man's food. When all food disappears modern man will try to correct his mistake, the conditions he caused upon the earth through his inventions. He will try to achieve some kind of method to heal the wound, but this will not be possible when we reach the point of no return.

Only through peace the survival of mankind and our planet Earth is possible. Only if we, the human race, are willing to change. The Hopi play a key roll in the survival of the human race through their vital communion with the unseen forces that hold nature in balance, as an example of a practical alternative to the suicidal man-made system, and as a fulcrum of world events. The pattern is simple. 'The whole world will shake and turn red and turn against those who are hindering the HOPI.'

---

This prophecy related to the Biblical version of which may yet come to pass. This prophecy goes on to say that the time will come when common people will become concerned and frustrated because they no longer can live with their hectic world. They will be particularly against the bloodthirsty policies and the deceitfulness of the world leaders. The unrest will be world wide as they foresee that the hope of living in peace has become hopeless. The world over the common man will band together to fight for world peace. They will realize that their leaders have failed in accomplishing peace. People in high places will be hunted down like animals, perhaps through terrorism. In turn leaders will retaliate and begin hunting each other. This condition will gather strength and spread far and wide. It will get out of control the world over. Revolution could erupt on our land.

The liberators will come in from the west with great force. They will drop down from the sky like rain. They will have no mercy. We must not get on the house tops to watch. They will shake us by our ears, like children who have been bad. This will be the final decisive battle between good and evil. This battle will cleanse the heart of people and restore our mother earth from illness and the wicked will be gotten rid of.

The prophets dare say a peaceful new world order will be drawn in Hopiland. The people will live under one God and leader. WE will speak one language, the Hopi. The earth will bloom again.

If this fails to materialize our Great Creator through nature will do the task according to their plans. It could be total destruction in any form. Only a brother and sister will survive to begin a new way of life. This prophecy is frightening and doubtful. Perhaps it is of no value to most people.

---

How can there be peace? Nowhere is there peace, not even within the Hopi peaceful society. **Bahanna** society, every nation on earth from people in high places down to the lowest cast are not at peace. How can peace be accomplished when weapons are made to kill??? How can there be peace if people hate, not love??? Perhaps the only alternative now is "Purification".

---

Since mankind has lost peace with one another through the **conflict because** of the new ways, the Great Spirit, and the Great Creator has punished the people in many ways. Through ail of this there was always a small group who survived to keep the original ways of life alive. This small group are those who adhere to the laws of the Creator, who keep the spiritual path open, out from the circle of evil. According to our knowledge we are not quite out of the circle.

The men with ambitious minds will decrease, while the people of good hearts, who live in harmony with the earth, will increase until the earth is rid of evil. If the Hopi are right this will be accomplished and the earth will bloom again. The spiritual door is open, why not join the righteous people.

The Horny toad **Woman** gave Maasaw a promise **that** she would help him in time of need, saying she too had a metal helmet. After the Hopi have fulfilled their pattern of life, Maasaw will be the leader, but not before, for He is the first and He shall be the last.

At time's end, a new age will appear. There will be a new dawn of time when the world wilt bloom into peacefulness.

## Statement by the Keeper of the Hopi Fire Clan Tablets at Santa Fe in 1990

In 1990, the Traditional Hopi had not yet carried out their sacred duty of warning the nations of the world about Purification. The "House of Mica" (United Nations) had refused Hopi requests to address the General Assembly in 1949, 1962, and 1986. Traditional sentiment regarding the UN is summed up by these comments in a special newsletter published by the Traditional Elders of Hotevilla: *"...In fact, as we looked on, the UN entered the Persian Gulf war, rather than following their supposedly neutral tradition of resolving problems in peaceful ways. Therefore we have come to the conclusion that world peace is becoming hopeless. We still have our instructions to follow when we get to the point where leaders begin to corrupt everyone they can, and when relying on our leaders becomes impossible and our trust in them dims. Then not only True Hopi, but other devoted peoples as well, will choose to follow and struggle for their rights under the law of our Great Creator. This is a law that never changes nor breaks down. How does this failure fit the prophetic pattern? Why would we be told to go there when we have achieved so little? It is because the principle of choice always prevails. The Creator and Maasaw give us opportunities to influence the course of the future. If we make wise choices, the future will be better. If they are unwise, they will be worse."*

In December of 1990, Martin Gashweseoma, carrier of the sacred stone tablets of the Fire Clan, brought the tablets to Santa Fe, New Mexico to meet with Gov. Elect Bruce King and to make a statement to the public. Following is a news article regarding his visit and then the text of the statement Grandfather Gashweseoma gave on Friday, December 14:

---

THE NEW MEXICAN, Santa Fe  
December 16, 1990

Nature readying revenge, Hopi warn

by Kay Bird The New Mexican Staff

The signs are everywhere, the Hopi say: young men held hostage by the military to fight a war they want no part of; whales beaching themselves to beg mankind to clean the ocean; corrupt officials betraying the commandments of the Bible upon which they took their oaths of office.

The signs, spoken of in tablets that serve the Hopi as a counterpart to the biblical Ten Commandments, warn that the end of this era is upon us.

Martin Gashweseoma, an Elder of the Hopi tribe from Hotevilla, Ariz., brought the tablets dire message to Santa Fe last week, warning that if something is not done soon to prevent further natural and moral disaster, the Earth will cleanse itself of its pollutants - including the humanones.

"It's time for all human beings to look at the things that have developed," Gashweseoma said through interpreter Thomas Banyacya during a gathering at the Eldorado hotel on Friday. "It is starting to get close to the last stages."

The sacred stones are said to have been given to the Hopi people by Massau'u, the Great Spirit, when the Hopi people emerged from the underworld into the current world, which they consider to be Heaven.

One of the dark brown, flat stones is about the size of an index card, the other about half that size. Both are about a quarter-inch thick and have symbols, lines and other figures scratched on them.

Other people around the world also were given stones by Massau'u, Gashweseoma said; if they all come together, the world can begin moving toward purification.

He said he does not know where the other stones are.

The Hopi stand to benefit if the tablets' warning is heeded. As Gashweseoma and his companions see it, the more land that is returned to the Hopi, the better off mankind will be.

Why? Because the tablets held by the Hopi are the closest thing to a deed from Mother Earth that any member of humankind can get to a deed from Mother Earth, Gashweseoma said.

"These tablets represent a title, an agreement with the Creator that gave them guardianship," said Tom Banyacya Jr., the interpreter's son. "They're reasserting their authority to control that."

"We're only caretakers of it."

The tablets also contain the moral code that Hopi and all people are expected to live by, Banyacya Jr. said.

The warnings come from the same spirit, he said.

Gashweseoma carried the tablets, wrapped in a patterned cloth and tied to his waist, to Gov. elect Bruce King last week and asked for his help in repairing the world.

Four appeals have been made, unsuccessfully, to the United Nations to improve the world, Gashweseoma said.

"Following the fourth appeal, a last chance has been given to America and it involves the capital at Santa Fe," Gashweseoma wrote in a letter to King.

The Elders brought their national appeal from Arizona to Santa Fe because of the special significance New Mexico's capital has to the Hopi people, Gashweseoma said,

Santa Fe, founded by the Spanish in 1610, was the first European capital among the Indian people.

Banyacya said that a historic tablet such as the ones that Gashweseoma carries might be found in Santa Fe.

The tablets, said Gashweseoma, have instructed the Hopi people to watch for signs that the world is on a dangerous course. He said the final stage will be identified by famine, sickness, earthquakes and other natural disasters, and, finally, the buildup of "powerful weapons" "destructive to all mankind."

Eventually, the tablets warned, a "gourd full of ashes" would be invented and dropped from the sky, causing the oceans to boil and the land to burn.

That event, which Gashweseoma and others interpret to be the bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki, precedes the Day of Purification, which will result in "either total rebirth or total annihilation," the brochure said.

Gashweseoma was not entirely pessimistic about mankind's chances.

"Once they start the cleansing of the land, then a new life that we've had before will revive," he said. "We were living in a land called Heaven. We hope that will be reestablished."

The Associated Press Contributed to this story.

---

## The Public Statement of Martin Gashweseoma, Keeper of the Hopi Fire Clan Tablets, during his Mission to the New Mexico State Capital at Santa Fe, December 14, 1990:

I am the keeper of the sacred Fire Clan tablets of the Hopi at the village of Hotevilla. These tablets represent our ancient title to this land, which existed long before the arrival of Columbus, and has never been relinquished. They have been entrusted to me under the highest authority, to be held until the last stage of our prophecies has been completed. The signs that we have entered that final stage are now clear.

In fulfillment of my spiritual instructions I have come to Santa Fe, the oldest European capital on our land, to offer the people of the United States of America, and all humanity, a final opportunity to collaborate with the forces of creation to purify our lives, and restore peace to the world.

The root cause of the problems that threaten life on earth is the concept of land title acquired and maintained by force. Since modern civilization is based on this concept, it does not hold the key to peace.

Our original Hopi land title is based on permission. We received that permission from Massau'u, the guardian of all land and life, who holds it in trust for the Creator. Thus it is implemented by the forces that create this universe.

Regardless of differences in culture and tradition, true aboriginal title throughout the world is based on a similar relationship. To usurp aboriginal title by deception and force, then build an empire upon that basis, is to oppose the forces of life, and ensure the eventual destruction of that empire. The United States of America has become such an empire.

Before the White Man arrived from Europe, everything was in order. Our life was beautiful and clean. The land was green and there were plenty of flowers, animals, birds and trees, rain and clouds. We lived in

great happiness because we followed the simple life taught to us by Massau'u.

Massau'u is both a real person and a manifestation of the Creator. We met him in person near the place where we built our mother village of Oraibi, after a long migration to claim the land in his name. At that point he gave us permission to live here as caretakers, as well as the spiritual knowledge by which to keep the forces of life in balance. This knowledge is implanted in our sacred stone tablets.

But when the Europeans came they forced their religion, culture and language upon our children, which brought great division among our people. As a result, today our young people are turning away from this basic law. They no longer understand it. They only understand the White Man's law.

Because they were forced into this situation, there is now hardly anyone fulfilling the sacred instructions and correctly performing the ceremonies essential to the Hopi way of life. There are still leaders from various clans who know of these instructions, which reveal their true purpose in life, but more and more they are turning away. This intrusion by outside forces, and the harmful effect on our function as caretakers of life, is the reason life on Earth is now so disturbed.

Like the Hopi, original native peoples were placed across this continent, and given special instructions by a higher being. Each had special functions by which to hold life in balance, which they were still carrying out when the Europeans arrived. We know these foreigners once had similar spiritual means for promoting life, with which they were supposed to bless the native peoples. But they had apparently misused their power. Most of the native peoples were forcibly stripped of their culture, language and religious ceremonies, depriving them of

their function as caretakers. Those that remain face imminent cultural extinction. Clearly these foreigners are not here to help, but, to destroy everything the original people have left, and in doing so, destroy this world. The only hope for humanity lies in restoring true land title, which is inseparable from our function as caretakers of life.

For this reason we bring our sacred stone tablets to the New Mexico State Capital in Santa Fe. Because it is the first foreign capital on this land, there must be documents here that confirm the rights of the original native peoples, and possibly information regarding stone tablets such as those we brought with us. We want to see whether someone will search for such documents, proving whether the original title of the native peoples, including the Hopi, is still binding according to existing modern laws.

The Spanish people must have documented something concerning the Hopi title. When the Mexican government took over, it must have left similar documents, and the same holds true for the United States. There must be a whole stack of such documents. If the entire stack were turned over the search should not take long. The first few should prove that the native peoples hold the true title to this land, and the knowledge by which it should be protected.

The role the, foreigners were to play in protecting this land should also be revealed. Documents must exist that show where the United States turned against this original law. What document does the United States have that says it is supposed to protect this area?

The Spanish, the Mexican, and the United States governments have all fought over someone else's land without consulting the original, native peoples living on it, then created some kind of document. But what of the rights of the original native peoples? Who has the ability to look into this, and see that the basic rights of the Hopi and other native peoples are restored?

This is the key to the problem that threatens all life on earth. If someone can uncover this information and bring it before the world, it might be possible to reverse the destruction of the native cultures that lies at the root of the devastation that now threatens our entire world.

The great powers of the modern world need to realize that if they are to escape the punishment that lies ahead, what they are doing to native peoples around the world must be corrected. Those who accumulate power at the expense of the native peoples think they have a God-given right, but in doing so they are increasing the threat to all life. And although they now recognize that threat, they are powerless to reverse it by any means unless they stop preying upon the native peoples.

We came here to plant the seed of this realization, which could turn the course of all humanity away from disaster. An investigation within the area of the present Hopi villages would benefit all indigenous peoples. Moreover, those who now live at the expense of the native land title would thus be given the chance to correct their mistake, and avert the terrible consequences foreseen long ago by the Hopi, which are already in

evidence today. Either way, this would benefit all humanity.

Because our true original land title is essential to our role in holding this land and life in balance, we have never compromised that title by signing a treaty with the United States Government. We have never given it authority to destroy our culture and take our land, nor have the other original native peoples. Yet this is being done here and throughout the world.

Today the Hopi are forced to live under laws that come from Washington DC, such as those that created the Bureau of Indian Affairs and the so-called 'Hopi Tribal Council' without consent from the real Traditional People. In violation of our spiritual teachings, these agencies have been promoting paved roads, water lines, sewers and government-financed housing. They have even forced such things into Hotevilla, the village we founded in 1906 in order to protect the Hopi Way from such intrusions.

They are cutting our land into small allotments, confiscating our livestock, and allowing the land to be stripped of its mineral resources. Underground water is being depleted and the land is drying up. Open pit uranium mines are polluting the area with radioactivity, causing the birth of many deformed babies. This shows what is happening to indigenous people around the world.

Those who perpetrate such abuse, and the countless modern people who thrive from it, truly have no land title. They build their power through resources taken by force, then use those resources to gain power to take even more. Since they consider the true aboriginal title of indigenous peoples to be worthless, they treat us like animals to be kicked around.

But as the Purification foretold in our tradition materializes, they too will get kicked around. They will find themselves disrespected everywhere, just as they have disrespected others, and their power will collapse. Soon they will see how little power and authority they really have.

We hope they will heed our warning for their own sake, and for the sake of the native peoples who want nothing more than to rule themselves peacefully without being dictated to by anyone else. Part of the commission we received from the Creator through Massau'u is to sound this warning to the world.

We Hopi know our true white brother is to come and help us. He has a stone tablet representing his own title and power within the Creator's plan. By placing it together with our Fire Clan tablet, he may call upon the natural forces to purify the world. If the task of purification is left to these natural forces, we may all be wiped out. So it is up to all people to purify themselves voluntarily.

We have also known that if the wrong white brother should arrive, one who has lost his spiritual path and thus has no title, he would bring misery and destruction. But when the world problem becomes great enough this

false white brother will find his survival threatened. Where will he turn?

He proposes to save the world by converting everyone to what he calls 'democracy,' but can he even use it to save himself? We hear that democracy means rule by the people. Yet he has reached the point where only three people, the President, the Secretary of State, and the Secretary of Defense, can start a war against any nation that doesn't submit to their wishes, regardless of the will of the people, Congress, or existing laws.

We Hopi don't know what the word 'democracy' means. The 'Hopi Tribal Council' established by the United States is supposed to be a democracy, but in fact it is only an instrument through which our people are forced to submit to programs conceived in Washington. Offers of money, jobs, a better life, and so forth, really mean signing away control over their land and their life.

Such false democracy is being extended throughout the world. In the name of democracy the U.S. Government is taking control of native lands, exploiting the mineral resources to produce great wealth, then using that wealth to bribe native peoples elsewhere into accepting contracts to deforest their land.

The deployment of armies to protect the freedom of native peoples abroad is causing the loss of that very freedom. It is the task of the Hopi to warn everyone concerned that even in the name of freedom, this will unquestionably lead to a third world war much worse than the first two, which may leave hardly any life on earth. This is why our religion forbids us to join the army, even if we are drafted.

Today the American people are being taught how it feels to be held hostage. That is how we have felt, having been held hostage up to the present day. In truth, everyone in that army is held hostage by the Government. Young people who want to live a long life are forced to suffer in the Arabian desert. We know that **they are** about to be burnt up in a war if they don't stop. It's up to the President to recall the troops he has sent to the Middle East. They must all be allowed to refuse this fate and return home. It is especially urgent that all native people who have become involved come home right away.

Current education of the Hopi into modern ways is a continuation of the policy of forced acculturation that began when our children were first kidnapped and forced into schools. The attempt to convert the schools so as to promote Hopi culture damages Hopi culture even further. Instead of dancing at the right time of year in the plaza, the Hopi children are taught to do their dances in school, outside the natural cycle, ignorant of their significance, and without the traditional preparation by the whole family.

This disturbs the very harmony these dances meant to maintain. Prior to such **interference**, our community life was held together by the relationship between the religious societies, each composed of a careful balance of the special qualities of each clan, dancing together with the cycles of nature. The disruption of this pattern

accounts for the epidemic of delinquency and crime we witness today.

We know the Government would like to wash its hands of the schools, but instead of closing them it tries to put them into the hands of 'progressive' **Hopis** who have already lost their tradition. They should simply close the schools and let us return to our original methods of educating the young, which were already very advanced - the real education from which we were torn away. We have no need to learn from books. We have better methods by which children can learn how to live in peace, identify plants and animal tracks, and ultimately learn to keep the world in balance.

If the schools are closed, then those families who want their children to learn the English language would have to move out, earn money, and pay for that education themselves. This is what Yukioma was standing for when he brought the sacred stone tablets of the Fire Clan with him in **1906**, and led the founding of our village at Hotevilla.

There is a document by the Mennonite missionary, H.R. Voth, which testifies to the superior quality of education he witnessed among the Hotevilla children after the new village became established. They learn not only how to read the animal tracks, but many songs, dances, ceremonies and painting, all of which contribute to a very good memory, as well as a solid understanding of the Way of Peace.

The proof that this education **really** works is in the fact that we never needed jails, courts, police, hospitals, or complicated systems of administration to keep things in check. There was hardly any sickness because we lived only from the food we grew organically, without chemicals. Any sickness that did occur could be healed with ceremonies and herbs. Even today there are old people so strong that when you try to follow them up a hill you can't catch up with them.

Now, as our land is being gradually cut up by the government, this beautiful life is disappearing. The recent division of our land with the Navajos, which the United States enforces through its courts and police, is clearly a means to seize total control, even of that land supposedly granted to the Hopi. Those **Hopis** who are relocated onto new areas are only allowed to lease that land from the 'Hopi Tribal Council.'

Only a few centuries ago there were no Navajos here. We were protected by the Paiute people to the north, who learned many words from our language. Later the Navajos arrived. Since they often survived by raiding, they became a problem to the Spanish and later to the American settlers. The Americans responded by rounding up all the Navajos under Kit Carson and putting them in prison. Later they gave them a portion of the Hopi homeland through the 1868 treaty. After it was learned that the land given to the Navajos contained valuable resources, instead of enforcing the treaty restriction that they remain there, the United States' just let them wander off, then created another reservation for them on land belonging to the Paiutes, and **moved** the Paiutes out.

When the Navajos expanded onto the Hopi area, rather than force them back onto the Paiute land the Government made still another reservation for them on the Hopi land.

With the discovery of mineral resources in that area came the passage of Public Law 93-531, which was not requested by the true Hopi leaders, but promoted by lawyers through the 'Hopi Tribal Council,' creating the illusion before the world that the Hopi have traded certain areas of their land over to the Government, or approved mineral leases.

Public law 93-351 divides our land still further, by requiring both Hopi and Navajo families to be forcibly relocated, and the artificial Hopi-Navajo border fenced with barbed wire. Our Elders have long warned of the time when a line might be drawn around our feet, granting us no more land than that, which really means we would have no land at all. This time is not far off.

We want everyone to know that the Navajos are not the ones taking our land, but the United States. The Hopi and the Navajo made peace long ago, and sealed their agreement spiritually with a medicine bundle. It is through the puppet governments, the 'Tribal Councils' forced upon both nations by the United States, that the illusion of a conflict has been created on the basis of the false modern concept of land title.

This short history shows how our land has been taken away. Why is this happening? It is done through younger Hopis, robbed of their tradition through compulsory foreign education, and arbitrarily empowered to speak for their whole nation through the 'Hopi Tribal Council,' yet

never consult with their original leaders. Would you allow your children to sign away your family possessions without even letting you know? That's exactly what the 'Hopi Tribal Council' is doing.

Land title based on such deceit and coercion is theft from the very forces that gave us life. Since most of modern civilization is based on such false entitlement, it can only destroy itself. The severe problems that face not only humanity, but every form of life on Earth, serve to warn that the time of destruction is at hand.

We can no longer escape. We must trace this situation to its root cause. This is why I act now to call world attention to the true nature of aboriginal land title, which alone holds the key to world peace. Hopi land title is based on our agreement with the Creator, the true owner of the land, through our meeting with Massau'u, to serve as its caretakers. This requires genuine knowledge of the pattern through which people can live together in peace without relying on the use of force. This way of life can continue forever.

So for the sake of the indigenous nations that remain with us today, and all people who are moved to correct their ways and restore that harmony which can enable life in this world to continue, I have come to Santa Fe, the first European capital established on our land, to urge that those documents that might reveal the true nature of our title to this land be investigated and revealed, and to place our knowledge of the Way of Peace at your service.

We hope that what we are asking will be brought about soon, and that those who sincerely wish to resolve this great crisis will make use of our knowledge.

## Statement by Hopi Spiritual Leaders on August 7, 1994

The following letter was posted on CompuServe in 1994. I don't know how it was delivered to the man who posted it (a Swiss named Rudi Schultheiss), but I believe the letter is authentic. Its message is consistent with others coming from the same Hopi Traditionals. Keep in mind that this letter was delivered after the Hopi had twice delivered their prophecies and warnings at the House of Mica (the UN). The elders said the representatives of the world governments "listened politely, then did nothing." The following letter was perhaps one more attempt by the Hopi Traditionals to deliver their message as instructed by Maasau.

---

(The following HOPI-message for all mankind is written for CompuServe by Rudi Schultheiss, Switzerland, 100343,552.

Forum: New Age  
Section: Community Square  
To: All  
Date: Sunday, August 07, 1994 1:08:05 PM  
From: Schultheiss Rudi, 100343,552

We are entering the last days. The Hopi Spiritual Leaders have spoken their urgent warning and message to the United Nations and around the world, yet there has been no response.

The sacred lands of the Hopi are being desecrated by water and power lines. The bulldozers are on the land. Soon the Hopi will be unable to conduct their ceremonies. Listen to their words. Then respond. The leaders say it is our turn to act.

The Government of the United States only recognizes the illegally elected tribunal council - These are not our leaders, this is not our way. We must be left alone and allowed to follow our original instructions without the interference of western ways. We must protect these sacred lands, these sacred ways. If these instructions are not followed, the Purification will begin. Already the signs of the days of Purification are beginning: For the sake of Mother earth and here children, for the sake of all your children and your children's children action is needed now.

Hopis' Ancient Knowledge and Prophecies are warning through many signs, that we have entered a dangerous period in our lives. Mankind must return to Peaceful ways, and halt the Destruction of Mother Earth, or are we going to destroy ourselves. All the Stages of Hopi prophecy have come to pass, except for the last, the purification. The intensity of this purification will depend of how humanity collaborates with Creation.

We must Correct and Changes our ways, go back to the Spiritual ways, and take care of Mother Earth. If we do not, we are going to face terrible destruction by Nature, wars will come like powerful winds, bringing Purification

or Destruction. The more we turn away from the Instructions of the Great Spirit, the m&e signs we see in the form of earthquakes, floods, drought, fires, tornadoes; along with wars and corruption.

If we do not Correct and Change these things, we are all going to suffer, there is no way we will be able to help each other after this. The World problems, and the Destruction of Mother Earth will be so terrible, there may be nothing left on this Earth. We do not want to see this happen.

We hope that by bringing these Warnings to the attention of the people of this land, and around the World, that we will understand the Seriousness of this moment, that we may be able to help one another, and to help bring about a better way of Life.

-Hopi Traditional Leaders included: Dan Evehema, Martin Gashweseoma, Manuel Hoyungowa; assisted by spokesman Thomas Banyacya.



## Recent Hopi History: Preface to Hopi Elder Dan Evehema's Message To Mankind

A visitor to **Hopiland** in the mid-1800s would have found a culture which – despite 300 years of cruel Spanish interference – still conducted a largely intact ceremonial cycle. However, the actions by the United States government which was just beginning to assert itself in the affairs of the Hopi would prove to be a catastrophe of unimaginably **greater** scale. For the last 120 years, the traditional culture of the Hopi has been under almost constant assault. The effect has been devastating: the number of Hopi living traditional lifestyles today is down to almost none. Many ceremonies can no longer be performed, due to a lack of initiated Hopi. The story of how this occurred is one of which no U.S. citizen can be proud. It is a story of cultural genocide.

The information presented below may help you understand Grandfather Evehema's plea for help which follows (page 42). I have found that the tiny amount of information presented on **Hopiland** by the media does not, contain the point of view of the Traditional People. As you read the following, keep in mind the words of Grandfather Katchongva:

**"People everywhere must give Hopi their most serious consideration, our prophecies, our teachings, and our ceremonial duties, for if Hopi fails, it will trigger the destruction of the world and all mankind. I have spoken through the mouth of the Creator. May the Great Spirit guide you on the right path."**

Beginning in the late **1800s**, and ending only in 1971 by an Executive Order of President Nixon, the U.S. government pursued a policy of "Forced Acculturation" in which Indian children of all tribes were forcibly taken from their families and sent to boarding schools sometimes thousands of miles from their homes. The schools I have seen are surrounded by tall fences with barbed wire and look and feel more like prison camps than schools of any kind.

In these schools, often run by Evangelical Christian organizations under contract with the Federal Government, Indian children were forced to wear western clothing and speak only English. Children caught **speaking** their own language were punished, usually beaten. Their terrifying ordeal often began with the cutting off of their hair, a **brutal** act of deep symbolic meaning in most Indian cultures. Grandfather Thomas Banyacya said the school he was sent to was conducted as a military school, with children beginning their days with a pledge of allegiance to the U.S. flag and by being marched to and from meals and classes. The children were often kept away from their **families** and communities for years, and missed all of the rituals and traditional teachings they would have experienced at home. (If you doubt this could be true, ask any middle-aged or older Native American -but only if you have a strong heart.) The children were taught that the ways of their people were "primitive," "shameful" or "idolatry." When they were returned to their communities after eight years or more, they found themselves strangers in their own land. The emotional and cultural damage caused by this policy is impossible to estimate. As a policy of assimilation, it has been gruesomely efficient: many of the traditional ways of life have been lost. Even among the Hopi, only a small minority follow traditional lifestyles, Grandfather Evehema was one of the very last fully traditional Native Americans in the United States of whom I am aware. Native peoples in Canada and Australia were subject to the same assimilation policies.

In Hopiland, children were sent to schools in Keams Canyon, Tuba City to the west, Phoenix, AZ, California and who knows where else. The Hopi initially refused to give up their children, but the Federal Government agents sent soldiers to take them forcefully. In a cynical ploy used again and again with many of the Native Nations, the U.S. employed members of the rival Navajo tribe as soldiers to capture the **Hopis'** children. Raids were staged after snowfall so soldiers could follow the tracks of children who had run to escape. The U.S. government used acts of **violence and imprisonment of Hopis who refused to hand over their children to coerce** cooperation with the will of the Federal Government. In **1895, 19** traditional Hopi men were sent to Alcatraz prison. Many others were held in Keams Canyon and Fort **Wingate**. Under this terrific pressure, a rift developed among the **Hopi**. **More and more Hopi agreed to** allow their children to be taken. These Hopi were termed the "Friendlies" by government agents at offices in Keams Canyon. The **Hopis who stubbornly kept** their traditional ways and therefore kept the Hopi Covenant with the Creator were termed "Hostiles". Eventually **even Tewaquaptewa**, the Kikmongwi (traditional leader) of the mother village Oraibi, went over to the side of the "Friendlies". The tension grew until September 1906, when the "Friendlies" – led by Tewaquaptewa – violently forced the "Hostiles" out of Oraibi, with only the clothes on their back. The Traditionals, led by Yukioma (Grandfather Dan Katchongva's father) established the **village** of Hotevilla, and dedicated it as **the new shrine for the Hopi Covenant with the Creator**.

Despite the looming **hardship**s of surviving the first winter without food or shelter, the greater trouble came from the U.S. government, which had not given up the aim of breaking Hopi resistance to the will of the U.S. Government. Yukioma and all of the Traditional heads of household were imprisoned at Keams Canyon. Some of them were then taken to Fort **Wingate**, and from there to Florence Penitentiary. Eleven of the younger men were sent **to** the Carlisle boarding school. In **Hotevilla**, the women, children and very elderly were left to try to survive the harsh desert winter on their own. The men at Keams Canyon were freed about April the following year. The men at Florence were kept in prison for a year and a half, leaving their families on their own for two winters. Yukioma was kept prisoner in **Keams** Canyon for most of the rest of his life for the crime of **refusing** to order his people to abandon their traditional ways. Yukioma's son Dan Katchongva eventually became Kikmongwi and leader of the last remaining traditional Hopi.

During the **1800s** and early 1900s the Hopi were subjected to other brutalities, including several waves of deadly smallpox, several extraordinarily brutal delousing incidents in which soldiers stripped Hopi men and women and **forced** them into vats of sheep dip, several land "distribution" and "management" plans, the destruction by government road builders of the beloved cliff-side shrine marking the place where Hopi ancestors met **Maasau**, various Mormon and Mennonite missionary activities, and many, many other horrifying incidents.

In 1936, after passage in 1934 of the "Indian Reorganization Act", the BIA installed the "Hopi Tribal Council". BIA agents conducted an election in which only 755 of the approximately 4500 **Hopis** voted. Of those that voted, 651 were in favor of the provisions which would mean the end of the traditional system of government in which each village -headed by the Kikmongwi - was independent. The great majority of Hopi refused to take part in the election, seeing it as interference in the traditional system of self-government. (Many of the people who voted were not in fact Hopi but descendants of exiles from Pueblos along the Rio Grande in what is now New Mexico who fled Spanish reprisals for the Pueblo Revolt of the **1600s**. The Hopi allowed them to settle in the eastern end of Hopiland.) Based on the results of the vote by a minority of the Hopi, the BIA installed a western-style democracy headed entirely by non-trationals. The federal government has backed the Tribal Council ever since, including supplying it with the means and training to create a large paramilitary police force known as the Hopi Rangers. I have had the misfortune to see the Rangers in action several times. They are an extremely aggressive force which conducts an unrelenting campaign of harassment against the Traditional Hopi and Dineh peoples (Dineh, which is pronounced *dee-neh*, is the traditional name of the Navajo people.)

In the late **1960s**, the Hopi and Navajo Tribal Councils - under pressure from the BIA and US Department of the Interior - leased rights to the British Peabody Coal company to strip coal from a 65,000 acre track of land north of the villages of Hopi land. It was further agreed that Peabody could construct a **slurry** pipeline to the Mojave Power Plant in southern Nevada (which supplies power to Las Vegas) and pump **well** over a billion gallons of water per year out of the limited local aquifer in order to make the **slurry**. The government and Peabody Coal assured the Tribal Councils they would benefit from the proceeds from the sale of the coal. Strip mining began in 1970. The traditional leaders of the Hopi (the Kikmongwis) sent a letter to President Nixon that year protesting the action. (See page 45.) Almost immediately, Peabody - together with a consortium of energy companies, the BIA and U.S. Department of the Interior -began pushing for an **expansion** of the mining rights into an area occupied by 10,000 Dineh who were living traditional lifestyles.

On December **22, 1974**, President Ford signed Public Law **93-531**, the Hopi-Navajo Settlement Act. It was billed as an attempt to settle a dispute between the Hopi and Dineh in which the Hopi claimed that the **more-numerous Dineh** had illegally settled on Hopi land north of the villages. But the effect of the act was to transfer a large portion of Black Mesa which was in the "Hopi/Navajo Joint Use Area" to the Hopi Reservation. After passage of the act, the Hopi Tribal council under provisions in PL 93-531 requested that the 10,000 Traditional Dineh living in the transferred land be forcibly removed. The 10,000 Dineh were "resettled" into border towns such as Winslow, AZ, Gallup, NM and others where no kind of traditional life is possible. It is difficult to convey how brutal and devastating this action is to an indigenous person. The Dineh living in these towns now experience a high incidence of drug and alcohol abuse, suicide and domestic violence.

Shortly after the resettlement, the Hopi Tribal Council agreed to **expanded** mining rights for Peabody Coal to further strip-mine sacred Black Mesa. By the **mid-1990s**, all of the higher springs and wells in the area have gone dry due to the extraordinary amount of water pumped by Peabody for the slurry pipeline. Since the area is desert, the rate of water replenishment is extremely low. The Traditionals say all water will be gone in 2-7 years, at which point all 6000 Hopi, including Tribal Council members, will be without water.

Interestingly, the federal government did not remove all Dineh off the area outlined by P.L. 93-531. More than 60 families of Traditional Dineh were allowed to remain in an area just north of Hotevilla called "Big Mountain". Hopi elder Thomas Banyacya called this especially sacred area the "Jerusalem" of Hopiland. In August 1996, lawyers representing the Traditional Dineh Grandmothers of Big Mountain succeeded in getting a court to temporarily stop the mining. Within a month, Senator John **McCain** of Arizona (who is Chairman of the powerful Senate Commerce Committee and who was Dole's military advisor during the 1996 Presidential campaign) sponsored Senate **Bill 1773**, the 'The Navajo-Hopi Land Dispute Settlement Act of 1996'. A House/Senate version of this bill was passed and signed into law by President Clinton in October, 1996. According to people working with Roberta Blackgoat, the Dineh Grandmother who represents the Traditional Dineh of Big Mountain, the law authorizes the removal by force of all of the remaining Dineh off Big Mountain. The date for the removal was set for the end of March, 1997.

A federal lawsuit brought by friends of the traditional Dineh failed, but at least focused some attention on the issue. Perhaps in response the Hopi Tribal Council in April 1997 gave the Grandmothers and traditional Dineh of Big Mountain the choice to sign a "Lease Agreement" in which they give up claim to the land and which grants them permission to stay on the land for 75 years, after which time they will be removed by force. I was crestfallen to hear that virtually all of the Dineh signed the Lease Agreement, although this is certainly understandable given the alternative was almost certain bloodshed at the hands of Tribal Council and Federal Government forces. I certainly am happy the bloodshed was avoided, but I am concerned about the consequences of signing away traditional claim to the land. Reportedly only Grandmother Roberta Blackgoat and members of a few other families refused to sign. As of June, 1999, a new date for the removal of those who did not sign was set for February **1, 2000**. This date appears to have teeth in it since BIA officials have increased their confiscation of Dineh livestock and brazenly discussed their plans on a local Albuquerque newscast, disingenuously claiming the action has nothing to do with Peabody Coal.' At stake is the most holy central shrine of the Hopi; land the elders have told us is important to the balance of life on Earth. Here is what Grandfather Banyacya told the U.N. in 1992 about Big Mountain

**The Four Corners area of the Hopi is bordered by four sacred mountains. The spiritual center within is a sacred site our prophecies say will have special purpose in the future for mankind to survive and now should be left in its natural state. All nations must protect this spiritual center.**

A traditional Hopi friend reaffirmed earlier statements by Hopi Traditionals that they believe it is right for Dineh to be living on Big Mountain, since Hopi prophecy holds that the Dineh will occupy and protect the land. However he did say that the land has been and is Hopi land, and that there were no Dineh living on Big Mountain when Hotevilla was founded in 1906. Dineh say the land is their ancestral homeland, although Roberta Blackgoat has affirmed that the Dineh arrived in the Southwest from the north 500 years ago. I simply point out there is little argument between Traditional Hopi and Dineh over the presence of the Dineh on Big Mountain. The contest is between Westernized forces; at stake is millions of dollars in coal mining royalties. For the Traditional Dineh view of this situation, see page 115.

Traditional Dineh are not the only targets of the Hopi Tribal Council and their Rangers. The Traditional Hopi have also been subject to an increasingly brutal campaign of repression. In February 1997, Rangers forced their way into the home of a Traditional Elder of Hotevilla and removed non-Hopi visitors. The Elders say the Tribal Council does not want any outside witnesses to its activities.

The Tribal Council has in recent years been installing utilities in the traditional village of Hotevilla. This has been done over the strenuous objections of the Elders, who point out that these things were foreseen and explicitly forbidden by prophecy. They are a direct violation of the Hopi Covenant with the Creator. In December of 1995, sewer lines were installed during **Soyal**, the most sacred time of the year, and the time when the underworld spirits are closest to the surface. Traditional law forbids digging anywhere in **Hopiland** during **Soyal**.

1999 began with two sad events for the traditional Hopi. In January, the eldest traditional elder Dan Evehema "put on his cloud mask" and joined his ancestors. On February **6th**, Grandfather Thomas Banyacya, the last of four Hopi chosen in 1948 to carry prophecy to the world, followed Grandfather Evehema to the Spirit World. Grandfather Banyacya's passing had been anticipated for some time due to cancer, but I think Grandfather

---

<sup>7</sup> Peabody Holding Company was bought in 1998 by Lehman Merchant Banking Partners II for \$2.3 billion.

Evehema caught everyone by surprise. This despite his advanced age, which was anywhere from 105 to 108 years, depending on the source.

There is much more to this sad situation. Again, for a more complete picture, read "Hotevilla". However I do not know how you will get updated information. The national media has ignored countless pleas to accurately cover events in Hopiland. And now the Hopi Rangers are physically removing potential witnesses. If it is your way, please pray for the strength and protection of the traditional Hopi and Dineh and sacred Big Mountain. Also please pray for healing and unity among all Hopi. Since Hopiland is a microcosm of the whole world, we are praying for ourselves.

---

### Hopi Elder Dan Evehema's Message To Mankind

Posted on the Internet late in 1996 at: <http://www.timesoft.com/hopi/> It now can be found on the "Hopi Information Network": <http://www.infomagic.com/~abyte/hopi/>

Until the speaking of Hopi traditionals on the Art Bell Talk radio show in June, 1998, (see page 46) this was the most recent expression of Hopi Prophecy. It came from Grandfather Dan Evehema, who was the eldest Elder of the Greasewood Clan in Hotevilla before his passing to Spirit in January 1999. He was one of the last remaining fully traditional Hopi. He was the co-author with Thomas Mails of the book *Hotevilla*. A portion of the following message was originally delivered by Grandfather David Monongye on September 6, 1976 to Hopi and Bahanna friends at a ceremony marking the 70th anniversary of the founding of Hotevilla. That address appeared in an issue of the newsletter *Techqua Ikachi* ("Land and Life"), which was published clandestinely by the Traditional Elders in Hotevilla 45 times between 1975 and 1986. (See page 29.) This message contains an overview of Hopi Prophecy and a cry for help. From what I have seen with my own eyes in Hopiland, the very few remaining Traditional Hopi are in urgent need of help. They have been under increasing pressure from the non-traditional Hopi Tribal Council, and things in the past several years have gone from very bad to even worse. For details, see "Recent Hopi History" page 39.

---

#### GRANDFATHER DAN EVEHEMAS MESSAGE TO MANKIND

I am very glad to have this time to send a message to you. We are celebrating a time in our history which is both filled with joy and sadness. I am very glad to have this opportunity to share these feelings with you because we know many of you are having the same troubles.

We Hopi believe that the human race has passed through three different worlds and life ways since the beginning. At the end of each prior world, human life has been purified or punished by the Great Spirit "Massauu" due mainly to corruption, greed and turning away from the Great Spirit's teachings. The last great destruction was the flood which destroyed all but a few faithful ones who asked and received a permission from the Great Spirit to live with Him in this new land. The Great Spirit said, "It is up to you, if you are willing to live my poor, humble and simple life way. It is hard but if you agree to live according to my teachings and instructions, if you never lose faith in the life I shall give you, you may come and live with me." The Hopi and all who were saved from the great flood made a sacred covenant with the Great Spirit at that time. We Hopi made an oath

that we will never turn away from Him. For us the Creator's laws never change or break down.

To the Hopi the Great Spirit is all powerful. He appeared to the first people as a man and talked with them in the beginning of this creation world: He taught us how to live, to worship, where to go and what food to carry, gave us seeds to plant and harvest. He gave us a set of sacred stone tablets into which He breathed all teachings in order to safeguard his land and life. In these stone tablets were made, instructions and prophecies and warnings. This was done with the help of a Spider woman and Her two grandsons. They were wise and powerful helpers of the Great Spirit.

Before the Great Spirit went into hiding, He and Spider woman put before the leaders of the different groups of people many colors and sizes of corn for them to choose their food in this world. The Hopi was the last to pick and then chose their food in this world. The Hopi then chose the smallest ear of Corn. Then Massauu said, "You have shown me you are wise and humble. For this reason you will be called Hopi (people of peace) and I will place in your authority all land and life to guard, protect and hold trust for Me until I return to you in later days for I am the First and the Last."

This why when a Hopi is ordained into the higher religious order, the earth and all living things are placed upon his hands. He becomes a parent to all life on earth. He is entitled to advise and correct his children in whatever peaceful way he can. So we can never give up knowing that our message of peace will reach our children. Then it is together with the other spiritual leaders the destiny of our future children is placed. We are instructed to hold this world in balance within the land and the many universes with special prayers and ritual which continue to this day.

It was to the Spider woman's two grandsons the sacred stone tablets were given. These two brothers were then instructed to carry them to a place the Great Spirit had instructed them. The older brother was to go immediately to the east, to the rising sun and upon reaching his destination was instructed to immediately start to look for his younger brother who shall remain in the land of the Great Spirit. The older brother's mission when he returned was to help his younger brother (Hopi) bring about peace, brotherhood and everlasting life on his return.

Hopi, the younger brother, was instructed to cover all land and mark it well with footprints and sacred markings to claim this land for the Creator and peace on earth. We established our ceremonials and sacred shrines to hold this world in balance in accordance with our first promise to the Creator. This is how our migration story goes, until we meet the Creator at Old Oribe (place that solidifies) over 1000 years ago. It was at that meeting when he gave to us these prophecies to give to you now at this closing of the Fourth World of destruction and the beginning of the Fifth World of peace. He gave us many prophecies to, pass on to you and all have come to pass. This is how we know the timing is now to reveal the last warnings and instructions to mankind.

We were told to settle permanently here in Hopi land where we met the Great Spirit and wait for Older Brother who went east to return to us. When he returns to this land he will place his stone tablets side by side to show all the world that they are our true brothers. When the road in the sky has been fulfilled and when the inventing of something, in Hopi means, gourd of ashes, a gourd that when drops upon the earth will boil everything within a large space and nothing will grow for a very long time. When the leaders turned to evil ways instead of the Great Spirit we were told there would be many ways this life may be destroyed. If humankind does not heed our prophecy and return to ones original spiritual instructions. We were told of three helpers who were commissioned by the Great Spirit to help Hopi bring about the peaceful life on earth would appear to help us and we should not change our homes, our ceremonials, our hair, because the true helpers might not recognize us as the true Hopi. So we have been waiting all these years.

It is known that our True White Brother, when he comes, will be all powerful and will wear a red cap or red cloak. He will be large in population, belong to no religion

but his very own. He will bring with him the sacred stone tablets. With him there will be two great ones both very wise and powerful. One will have a symbol or sign of swastika which represents purity and is Female, a producer of life. The third one or the second one of the two helpers to our True White Brother will have a sign of a symbol of the sun. He, too, will be many people and very wise and powerful. We have in our sacred Kachina ceremonies a gourd rattle which is still in use today with these symbols of these powerful helpers of our True Brother.

It is also prophesied that if these three fail to fulfill their mission then the one from the west will come like a big storm. He will be many, in numbers and unmerciful. When he comes he will cover the land like the red ants and over take this land in one day. If the three helpers chosen by the Creator fulfill their sacred mission and even if there are only one, two or three of the true Hopi remaining holding fast to the last ancient teaching and instructions the Great Spirit, Massauu will appear before all and our world will be saved. The three will lay out a new life plan which leads to everlasting life and peace. The earth will become new as it was from the beginning. Flowers will bloom again, wild games will return to barren lands and there will be abundance of food for all. Those who are saved will share everything equally and they all will recognize Great Spirit and speak one language.

We are now faced with great problems, not only here but throughout the land. Ancient cultures are being annihilated. Our people's lands are being taken from them, leaving them no place to call their own. Why is this happening? It is happening because many have given up or manipulated their original spiritual teachings. The way of life which the Great Spirit has given to all its people of the world, whatever your original instructions are not being honored. It is because of this great sickness called greed, which infects every land and country that simple people are losing what they have kept for thousands of years.

Now we are at the very end of our trail. Many people no longer recognize the true path of the Great Spirit. They have, in fact, no respect for the Great Spirit or for our precious Mother Earth, who gives us all life.

We are instructed in our ancient prophecy that this would occur. We were told that someone would try to go up to the moon: that they would bring something back from the moon; and that after that, nature would show signs of losing its balance. Now we see that coming about. All over the world there are now many signs that nature is no longer in balance. Floods, drought, earthquakes, and great storms are occurring and causing much suffering. We do not want this to occur in our country and we pray to the Great Spirit to save us from such things. But there are now signs that this very same thing might happen very soon on our own land.

Now we must look upon each other as brothers and sisters. There is no more time for divisions between people. Today I call upon all of us, from right here at

home, Hotevilla, where we too are guilty of gossiping and causing divisions even among our own families; out to the entire world where thievery, war and lying goes on every day, These divisions will not be our salvation. Wars only bring more wars never peace. Only by joining together in a Spiritual Peace with love in our hearts for one another, love in our hearts for the Great Spirit and Mother Earth, shall we be saved from the terrible Purification Day which is just ahead.

There are many of you in this world who are honest people. We know you spiritually for we are the "Men's Society Grandfathers" who have been charged to pray for you and **all** life on earth never forgetting anything or any one in our ceremonials. Our prayer is to have a good happy life, plenty of soft gentle rain for abundant crops. We pray for balance on earth to live in peace and leave a beautiful world to the children yet to come. We know you have good hearts but good hearts are not enough to help us out with these great problems. In the past some of you have tried to help us **Hopis**, and we will always be thankful for your efforts. But now we need your help in the worst way. We want the people of the world to know the truth of our situation.

This land which people call the Land of the Freedom celebrates many days reminding people of the world of these things. Yet in well over 200 years the original Americans have not seen a free day. We are suffering the **final** insult. Our people are now losing the one thing which give life and meaning of life--our ceremonial land, which is being taken away from us. Hotevilla is the last holy consecrated, undisturbed Traditional Native American sacred shrine to the Creator. As the prophecy says, this sacred shrine must **keep its** spiritual pathways open. This village is the spiritual vortex for the Hopi to guide the **many** awakening Native Americans and other true hearts home to their own unique **culture**. Hotevilla was established by the last remaining spiritual Elders to maintain peace and balance on this continent from the tip of South America up to Alaska. Many of our friends say Hotevilla is a sacred shrine, a national and world treasure and must be preserved. We need your help.,

Where is the freedom which you all fight for and sacrifice your children for? Is it only the Indian people who have lost or are all Americans losing the very thing which you originally came here to find? We don't share the freedom of the press because what gets into the papers is what the government wants people to believe, not what is **really** happening. We have no freedom of speech, **because we** are persecuted by our own people for speaking our beliefs.

We are at the final stages now and there is a last force that is about to take away our remaining homeland.

We are still being denied many things including the right to be **Hopis** and to make our living in accordance with our religious teachings. The Hopi leaders have warned leaders in the White House and the **leaders** in the Glass House but they do not listen. So as our prophecy says then it must be up to the people with good pure hearts that will not be afraid to help us to fulfill our destiny in peace for this world. We now stand at a **cross** road whether to lead ourselves in everlasting life or total destruction. We believe that human beings' spiritual power through prayer is so strong it decides life on earth.

So many people have come to **Hopiland** to meet with us. Some of you we have met on your lands. Many times people have asked how they can help us. Now I hope and pray that your help will come. If you have a way to spread the truth, through the newspapers, radio, books, through meeting with powerful people, tell the truth! Tell them what you know to be true. Tell them what you have seen here; what you have heard us say; what you have seen with your own eyes. In this way, if we do fall, let it be said that we tried, right up to the end, to hold fast to the path of peace as we were originally instructed to do by the Great Spirit. Should you **really** succeed, we will all realize our mistakes of the past and return to the true path--living in harmony as brothers and sisters, sharing our mother, the earth with all other living creatures. In this way we could bring about a new world: A world which would be led by the Great Spirit and our mother will provide plenty and happiness for **all**.

God bless you, each one of you and know our prayers for peace meet yours as the sun rises and sets. May the Great Spirit guide you safely into the path of love, peace freedom and God on this Earth Mother. May the holy ancestors of love and light keep you safe in your land and homes. Pray for God to give you something important to do in this great work which lies ahead of us all to bring peace on earth. We the Hopi still hold the sacred stone tablets and now await the coming of our True White Brother and others seriously ready to work for the Creator's peace on earth.

Be well, my children, and think good thoughts of peace and togetherness. **Peace** for all life on earth and peace with one another in our homes, families and countries. We are not so different in the Creator's eyes. The same great Father Sun shines his love on each of us daily just as Mother Earth prepares the sustenance for our table, do they not? We are one after all.

Chief Dan Evehenta, (105) Spiritual leader, Eldest Elder  
Greeswood / Roadrunner Clan Society Father / Snake  
Priest / Kachina Father.

From Hotevilla, Arizona, Hopi Sovereign Nation.

## Letter to President Nixon protesting the Strip-mining of Black Mesa

In 1970 the Peabody Coal Company, a British firm, began stripping coal from 65,000 acres it leased from the Navajo and Hopi tribes. Company officials declared that this mining would not damage Indian lands and in fact would improve the lives of many Navajos and Hopis. In disagreement with this action a group of Hopi wrote the following letter to President Nixon:

---

Dear Mr. President:

We, the true and traditional religious leaders, recognized as such by the Hopi People, maintain full authority over all land and life contained within the Western Hemisphere. We are granted our stewardship by virtue of our instruction as to the meaning of Nature, Peace, and Harmony as spoken to our People by Him, known to us as Massau'u, the Great Spirit, who long ago provided for us the sacred stone tablets which we preserve to this day. For many generations before the coming of the white man, for many generations before the coming of the Navajo, the Hopi People have lived in the sacred place known to you as the Southwest and known to us to be the spiritual center of our continent. Those of us of the Hopi Nation who have followed the path of the Great Spirit without compromise have a message which we are committed, through our prophecy, to convey to you.

The white man, through his insensitivity to the way of Nature, has desecrated the face of Mother Earth. The white man's advanced technological capacity has occurred as a result of his lack of regard for the spiritual path and for the way of all living things. The white man's desire for material possessions and power has blinded him to the pain he has caused Mother Earth by his quest for what he calls natural resources. And the path of the Great Spirit has become difficult to see by almost all men, even by many Indians who have chosen instead to follow the path of the white man. . . .

Today the sacred lands where the Hopi live are being desecrated by men who seek coal and water from our soil that they may create more power for the white man's cities. This must not be allowed to continue for if it does, Mother Nature will react in such a way that almost all men will suffer the end of life as they now know it. The Great Spirit said not to allow this to happen even as it was prophesied to our ancestors. The Great Spirit said not to take from the Earth - not to destroy living things. The Great Spirit, Massau'u, said that man was to live in Harmony and maintain a good clean land for all children to come. All Hopi People and other Indian Brothers are standing on this religious principle and the Traditional Spiritual Unity Movement today is endeavoring to reawaken the spiritual nature in Indian people throughout this land. Your government has almost destroyed our basic religion which actually is a way of life for all our people in this land of the Great Spirit. We feel that to survive the coming Purification Day, we must

return to the basic religious principles and to meet together on this basis as leaders of our people.

Today almost all the prophecies have come to pass. Great roads like rivers pass across the landscape; man talks to man through the cobwebs of telephone lines; man travels along the roads in the sky in his airplanes; two great wars have been waged by those bearing the swastika or the rising sun; man is tampering with the Moon and the stars. Most men have strayed from the path shown us by the Great Spirit. For Massau'u alone is great enough to portray the way back to Him.

It is said by the Great Spirit that if a gourd of ashes is dropped upon the Earth, that many men will die and that the end of this way of life is near at hand. We interpret this as the dropping of atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki. We do not want to see this happen to any place or any nation again, but instead we should turn all this energy for peaceful uses, not for war.

We, the religious leaders and rightful spokesmen for the Hopi Independent Nation, have been instructed by the Great Spirit to express the invitation to the President of the United States and all spiritual leaders everywhere to meet with us and discuss the welfare of mankind so that Peace, Unity, and Brotherhood will become part of all men everywhere.

Sincerely,

(signed) Thomas Banyacya, for  
Hopi Traditional Village Leaders:  
Mrs. Mina Lansa, Oraibi  
Claude Kawangyawma, Shungopavy  
Starlie Lomayaktewa, Mushongnovi  
Dan Katchongva, Hotevilla

## Transcript of Hopi Elders on Art Bell Talk, June 16, 1998

In June of 1998 radio talk show host Art Bell announced that three "Hopi Elders" had contacted him, asking for an opportunity to come on the air. Bell said they told him that "what they were seeing was so close they no longer had any choice." On hearing this my first thought was that it was very unlikely any of the true traditional Hopi would even consent to speak on the Art Bell show, much less ask to come on the air. Nonetheless I listened, on the off-chance Hopi traditionals did speak on the air.

I only needed to hear the very beginning of the interview to realize I was listening to authentic Hopi traditionals from the village of Hotevilla. I was astounded that they would speak through such a channel, and I began listening intently for what urgent purpose would lead them to do such a thing. As I listened, I became aware of two messages. One was directed at Bell's audience: an opportunity to hear Hopi prophecy, perhaps for the first time. As I listened, I began to feel strongly that there was a second message, unspoken, meant for those friends of the Hopi who had ears to hear: "It's very close now. Be sure you are ready."

The following transcript was retrieved from Art Bell's web site: [www.artbell.com/index.html](http://www.artbell.com/index.html). If you have access to a computer with "Real Audio" software you can listen to the interview over the internet. Instructions can be found on Bell's web site. The Hopi asked not to be identified, which is a first, so far as I know. Although I recognized the voices of the two Hopi men, I won't identify them in deference to their wishes. Please keep in mind that the traditionals are a besieged minority even among their own people. If it is your way, please pray for their strength, health and protection.

---

GF1=Grandfather 1, GF2=Grandfather 2,  
GM =Grandmother, GW=Robert Ghost Wolf

AB: Good morning, everybody. I'm Art Bell and if we get, our phones hooked up right, and we've just had a disconnect problem, we are going to, in this half hour, have two Hopi Elders on the program. We've never tried this before. Unfortunately, we just got a disconnect and we're getting a busy signal trying to get back through. So, bear with us. We will have all this connected shortly. We DO have Robert Ghost Wolf on the line from, I believe, one of the Dakotas. We'll find out about that in a moment and he'll give us kind of a preamble to what's going to happen.

AB: Here we go. This has never been tried on national radio before, so anything may happen here, folks. I have no idea. First, we are going to go to Robert Ghost Wolf, who is out somewhere in the Dakotas. Where ARE you, Robert?

GW: I'm in the Black Hills.

AB: Black Hills. Of North Dakota?

GW: South Dakota. I'm here with the family. It's Pow-Wow time. We're just all here together, and I'm going to be talking to some other Elders up here, possibly, about getting together with us.

AB: Would you explain to us?..uh, we are about to hear two Hopi Elders. We are not going to give their real names on the air. We are going to call them "Grandfather 1", "Grandfather 2", and "Grandmother Hopi." Why are we doing this?

GW: There has already been a lot of controversy about these Elders stepping out and speaking like this, to the world, and they have had some threats made **against** them already, so we are taking precautions to make sure that they're safe. I hope the people can understand this. And, I also hope that people understand that these people are not professional speakers or lecturers. We're going to do the best we can **fo** make this run smoothly, as soon as we get the phone lines hooked up again.

AB: All right. I think we ARE hooked up. Anyway, that is the explanation. There HAVE been threats.

GW: It's very dangerous for something like this to happen and it's very unusual for Elders to come out and speak like this. The thing is, we've hit a, point, **in** our progression through these changes, where **it's** important to get the news out. It's important for the children of the world. It's important for all of us to hear what they have been trying to say, now, for **many, many** years

AB: All right. Let's see if we can get the hook-up going here. I believe we're going to Phoenix, Arizona and let's see if we have Grandfather 2 **on** the line with us. Hello?



GF2: Hello!

AB: Yes, hello there.

GF2: Hi!

AB: I hear you just fine.

GF2: OK.

AB: Thank you for coming on the air tonight. You are going to give us information, Grandfather 2, and also translate for us?..is that correct?

GF2: Yes.

AB: OK. I think that my first question?..if I may ask the first question?..and Robert, you're welcome to ask one any time you'd like. I would like to ask Grandfather 1 why he has come forward in public at this time?

GF2: {Asks GF1 in Hopi language, then translates.}

GF1: {Answers in Hopi language.} It is our time to bring forth the message into the world. It has been taught to us by our Elders, from way back. That is why I have chosen to step forward and bring out the message today. There are people out there who are leading two lives?..who are there to stop us from putting forth the message, but it is the Elders, that taught us the wisdom, that are telling us to do this now for you and the rest of the world.

AB: With regard to what may be changing, Earth changes, is the time now very short?

GF2: {Asks, then translates.} It is time for the end times here, that was prophesied and through the dreams that were given to us also. Through those dreams, we are learning that we are getting very close to the end times.

AB: Might we ask how old Grandfather 1 is? His age?

GF2: {Asks?} Seventy-five. 75 years old.

AB: 75 years old. And, how old are the prophecies that we are talking about now?

GF2: {Asks?} He doesn't know exactly what the age of these teachings are. He says they were given to them before Christ. It is mainly by word of mouth that it has been handed down.

AB: How does Grandfather feel about the accuracy of the word that has been handed down? Many people dispute the Bible and whether or not IT is accurate. With regard to Hopi prophecy, how does HE feel about the accuracy of the prophecy?

GF2: {Asks?} From the time when Yukioma was the chief, he had been carrying this message. But mainly the message had been carried forth by word of mouth. The accuracy had to deal with how well each individual

that was given the opportunity to maintain the exactness of the prophecies. They were all given this prophecy, so they all had to meet at least once or twice a year, in the Kivas, where they would actually sit down and go back through that. One person would talk about the prophecies, and if he ever so much as added something to it or left something out, then the rest of the group would know that part of the prophecies was missing. So, they would tell him, "Well, you didn't say this one here," or "You added this to it." So, that is how this was kept alive through word of mouth and everyone had to remember just what those prophecies were about.

AB: Is Grandfather, or are you and others now having many dreams indicating that indeed these are the end times beginning to unfold?

GF2: {Asks?} Yes, I have dreamed about these things and that's how a lot of them are coming about and they are true.

AB: Uh, Robert? Help me out here?

GW: He would probably be willing to share any of his visions of what he see coming in the immediate future.

GF2: I can't hear you, Robert.

AB: OK, the question is, would Grandfather care to share any specific details of the dreams that he has had about what may be coming soon?

GF2: {Asks?} It wasn't exactly through the dreams. The dreams were part of the teachings that he knows and having to understand the exactness of the prophecies themselves. He had to go out and do a lot of prayers. And then, he would go and do this and was doing this for a whole year. Within a year's time, he had kind of lost interest in the giving of the prophecies to him, because he hadn't received anything. So, he decided to quit for awhile. Finally, within a few months, he decided to go back to his prayers and he would go out and pray. Within, four year's time, he started receiving a lot of information. So, that is how most of his information was received?..through asking?..prayer.

AB: Could we please ask why he has decided to share it with the rest of the world? This is something that has not been done before, so why has he decided to share this with us?

GF2: {Asks?} Through the Elder's teachings and wishes. The Elders wanted to let this become public at a time when we were close to the end times. So, he had decided to take this upon himself to let go of these things, in hopes that there would be a number of people that would understand and realize what is going on and start praying. We ARE very close to it and we are, right now, going through hard times. He wants to set some people aside?..their lives?..so that some lives may be spared.

AB: That was going to be my **next** question, Grandfather, and that is, if you would ask Grandfather 1 whether prayer, whether becoming spiritual of nature, can or will change any of what is coming?

GF2: (Asks?) It's not a matter of quick change. If you wanted to change now and change your life around and do your prayers, **it** will help a little in the alleviation of much terrible outcome from the cataclysms. There is a lot in store for all of us and the intensity of this **will** be a lot less if we can all settle down and behave and not be in the way of the actions we have right **now?..like** we are all being corrupt. That has to be taken care of. We have to keep ourselves from being corrupted by anything from the outside.

AB: All right. We are going to stop for a moment, now, so everybody relax. Thank you very much. It is a great honor, indeed, to have Grandfathers 1 and 2 with us, and Robert Ghost Wolf in the Black Hills. We're talking about Hopi prophecy, and when we come back, we'll try to press for some details as best we can. I'm Art **Bell**. This is "Coast-to-Coast AM."

AB: What you're hearing, now, as far as **I** know, has never been done on national radio, before. So, listen very carefully. Let's go back to the Black Hills and **see** if Robert Ghost Wolf is still here. Are you there, Robert?

GW: We're still here.

AB: Okay, good and back to Phoenix, Arizona and Grandfather **One** and Two. Grandfather Two, are you there?

G2: Yes.

AB: What we would like to do, if it's possible, is to ask Grandfather One if he can give us any details of what is going to happen, here on Earth, with this prophecy. What is coming? Any specific details at all?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi language.

G2: Actually, there are a few that he thinks are important things that will be coming up pretty shortly. There's one thing for sure that we are going to **come** upon is that World War III is....it will take place....and starvation is definitely a part of this thing, where we will hit starvation. The weather change, itself, it's erratic, right now, and it's not what it should **be**. **This** weather climate, itself, it's actually taking care of the crops already in a way that **we're** losing it. That's part of...you **know.....leading** us into starvation because the crops **will** not produce,

GW: Do they know that you were just able to plant the corn up in Hopi land? Just a few days ago, like a week or so ago because of the weather?

G2: Yes. People have just started to do those things and it comes up but the winds are drying them up and the weather has been erratic, like **I** said, and it's been very cold. It's been...you know, actually....they get frost bitten. It's kind of like a frost bitten effect **on** it that it burns it up.

AB: Yes. Yes, we are having the same thing here in Nevada. A kind of a frost bite. You are exactly right. We are having the same thing, here, with the things that we have **planted** in the ground, in Nevada. As though they were frost bitten but, **I** think, affected by the winds, as well.

G2: Yes.

AB: Now, these are three things: weather change, mass starvation and the **third** world war. Would you please ask Grandfather if the weather changes are the beginning of these **changes.....if** what we have seen now, with the weather, is the beginning and, of course, we're going to want to ask how soon these other changes, he thinks, will happen.

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: Yes, these are the signs of, you know, the changes and that also part of it is, you know, right now we're having problems with crickets which 'is a part of these prophecies where they would come in hoards and they will destroy the crops, also, and that is happening, also.

GW: You're having that **in Nevada**, aren't you?

AB: Yes, we are. In Southern Nevada we are having that and, apparently, throughout. large portions of the Southwest we are having that....yes, indeed. So then, these weather changes are the beginning?

G2: Yes.

AB: When does Grandfather think the very serious parts of the prophecies, another world war and mass starvation . . . . .when will these begin to manifest? How far away from these are we?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: Well, it's been said that there is no exact time and date for these things . . . . . **events....to** take place but the year **2000** is a . . . . . **I** would say . . . . . that is a close approximation of **the time that** all of **this will** start to take place. The teaching **from the** Elders was that they talked about that everything will happen at once but, when they say these things, they put it in a form that, you know, they say it's going to all happen at once but it's not **exactness** of happening at once. It will happen but they will, you know, fall pretty much short from the other, following, it's like a domino effect. This is, you

know, when one thing happens then the other will fall into place. But, you know, it will be in a short time from one another so this is what Grandfather was talking about.

GW: Are we **talking** within the next two years?

Bell: Well, he seemed to say....by the year 2000. I guess this would be a first **question....if** there is a way to phrase this. Is the weather change, that we now have, the first domino?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

**G2:** It's been known that this had happened a long time ago but, in our prior world, it happened before, you know, the same things that we had gone through. The teachings were that we were not supposed to follow in the same pattern and try to keep ourselves from going astray from our teachings. These weather patterns that we talked about and cataclysms that take place, are not really set in order....in a fashion that any person could say that, 'Okay, the winds are going to do it this year and the next year will be fires and the following year will be earthquakes, you know.' Also, he's saying that it's not exactly his words that that is the way that it will take place but he knows that these are signs and they are readily available. All the signs are out there. Anyone can see that, that it is taking place and it's only going to get bigger.

AB: Grandfather said 'other worlds' or 'other civilizations' and that this has happened before. Now, did Grandfather mean by that that men have **walked** on the Earth before and that great catastrophes...like the one we are now talking about.....came and wiped them out and man started again. Is that what Grandfather meant?

**G2:** Yes.

**GW:** I have a question, if I may? There's a lot of talk, out now, and a lot of theories and a lot of prophecies about these changes having dramatic effects on the configurations of the land **masses.....that** they will be tremendous, cataclysmic changes. Does Grandfather . . . .do the **Hopis** see this as happening in that manner? Will there be very dramatic Earth changes and will cause the face of the Earth, as we know it, to change dramatically?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi tongue.

**G2:** Ah, yes. The Earth changes will take place in such a way, you know, that this whole planet, here, will become a different type of planet because of the changes in itself. It has happened before, as we mentioned earlier, that it did happen before that they went through these changes and they was taught they we

weren't supposed to go back to the same routine that we had gone through in the past life. That was the corruption that we were going through....what we're going through, today. There is so much corruption out there. These were the things that led us to these things and even animals, insects, all of these things will all turn around on us and, you know, they're going to lead us to the same things again.

GW: So, we're repeating history.

**G2:** Yes. Even though it can be your own pet, it can turn against you.

AB: The animals will turn against us. Already, I have talked to many **experts.....animal** experts....who are saying that animal attacks, all across North America, are increasing many, many fold. So, this could be the beginning of that.

**G2:** Yes.

Bell: **Alright**, we are close to another break but I would like to ask Grandfather if there will be any difference in the way the people in the cities.....the great cities of America and the World....Los Angeles, New York, Chicago.....will **feel** these changes and the people in remote areas like New Mexico, Arizona, Nevada and the Dakota where Robert is now? Will there be a big difference?

**G2:** In the changes?

AB: Yes.

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

AB: **Alright**, I must break in here, Grandfather. We must take a break, now. When we come back, we **will** look for the answer to that question. **Alright?**

**G2:** Okay.

AB: Good morning. I am Art Bell, and if you're joining us at this hour, we're involved in the middle of something unprecedented on national talk radio, no question about that. In the Black Hills of South Dakota, we have Robert Ghost Wolf. In the area of Phoenix, Arizona, we have Grandfather 1 and Grandfather 2. These are two Hopi Elders, and we are asking questions about Earth changes. Thus far, we have determined that they are close, that the weather-pattern changes **are** part of it, that the weather is due to change a great deal more, that there will be starvation and World War III. This is Hopi prophecy that you're listening to everybody and in addition to that, we've asked about the cities and the country, and massive Earth changes. In other words, changes of continental locations, and that would also appear to be in the offing. We are going to continue to ask

questions for as long as we're able. I am Art Bell and this is "Coast-to-Coast **AM**," so stand by.

(Commercials)

AB: My **website** is down, so if you're trying to get in it will be futile until we get this squared away. First, back to Robert Ghost Wolf in the Black Hills of South Dakota. For those who have just joined, we are not using names other than Grandfather 1 and Grandfather 2, two Hopi Elders from the Hopi Sinom. The reason we're not using names, again, **Uh** Robert?..please.

**GW**: There have been many threats to these Elders, who are having the courage to come out and speak these prophecies to the world, for various reasons. We are trying to keep them and their families safe, and also keep them from being inundated by harassment from people who feel, perhaps, that these messages should not be shared with everyone in the world, which is not their opinion. This is why they are here now talking to us. I just got news that **OUR website** is down.

AB: **YOUR website** is down, too.

**GW**: If people want to get more information about these prophecies, I have a number that they can call to get the books that have at least '200 of these prophecies in them. That's **1-800-905-8367**. There are operators standing by right now, because of what happened to the **website**. OR they can call the Wolf Lodge office in Washington State at 1-509-465-1606.

AB: That's **1-509-465-1606**. It's odd that your site and my site are both down. I think it's traffic-related. All right, now back to Phoenix, Arizona. Grandfather 1, the question was, all of these changes including a world **war?..uh**, will there be a different effect in the cities than there is in the country?

**GF2**: A different effect in the cities?

**AB**: Yes. In other words, will there be more trouble in the cities?..in America's large cities or the world's large cities?..with these changes?

**GF2**: {Asks **GF1?**} Yes, in the big cities, it will effect a lot. You know, how much corruption there will be within the cities. Also, the people themselves have to be aware of all of these things that will take place, so they must change, too. But, he's not asking anyone to follow him in the way he put himself on the path he is on. He is not asking anyone to follow him in that. **It is up to the** individual to make that decision for him/herself as to which direction they want to go. When you make that choice for yourself, what. you want to do with your life, you don't blame anybody else for your own actions, for what **you** do. If something happens to you along the way, then you are not going to say that you were forced into it. These are the things that he had looked into also.

That's why he's saying that he's not asking anyone to follow him in the way he's leading himself. He's only giving out advice that this is what they should do. They should start changing themselves and going back to the old ways of living simple lives, of taking care of themselves from the land that is available to them, and from the food that they grow. These are the **things, that** will help you along the way when you come. to your hard times. So, the people must make these decisions for themselves.

AB: All right. There are many that I have interviewed, many others who see the future, who say that our Sun is beginning to change and that it is causing some of these changes here on Earth. Does Grandfather know anything about that?

**GF2**: [Asks?] From these teachings that were given to him, he has understood that the solar axis itself, of the Sun, is going to change. The places that normally have cold weather will have hot weather. You know, the weather itself is going to get even worse. The temperatures are going to rise even **higher, and** that will bum up the crops and dry up the Earth, so nothing will be able to grow. It is true that the Sun itself is being affected by this also.

AB: In farmer's fields around the world, in many, many places in the world,?..as a matter of fact even tonight, for the first time ever in the state of **Virginia**, **there** is a very complex crop circle. These are strange formations in farmer's crops. Does Grandfather know anything about what these may be, and why they happen?

**GF2**: (Asks?) He has heard about these. **He has** seen pictures of the crop circles that have been out there. These are, in his own mind, teachings also, and they're telling us what is becoming of our time and 'where it is leading us. He has had a chance to look at a few of them, and he does understand what they're trying to put through?..the message in the circle itself. It is telling us that we are very close to it and what we need to do in order to get ourselves back on track, and the other end of it?..when he says, the other end of it, where you get to see all the things happen and live again?..for a new life to start.

AB: OK. Uh, then this is a good question. We have many strange machines that fly in our sky that we call **UFOs**. What do the Hopi have to say regarding these kinds of things, that have been seen to fly in the sky, what the Hopi may have called, "Star Brothers who **have come** from the heavens?"

**GF2**: {Asks?} I'd like to add a little to **what he** just said. This is referring to the question prior to this one. I didn't finish it out. He said that the crop circles were put there **by** outside, **like the UFO people**, but **he's** not **sure just** who put those crop circles there. But, to get back to the question that is the last one here, the teachings from the

Elders, he said, yes they know about the possibilities of other life forms on other planets. The "Old Ones," the old people, the "Old Ones" way back had the knowledge and know-how of getting around, and they have traveled to other planets before and they know how it is out there, if there is life on other planets and they DO know that there is life on other planets and what planets are not livable. But, they don't know the exactness of how they will be helping us out or they will be going against us. They just know that when we are getting close to the end times, we will be visited by people from out there, and we're not aware whether they're going to help us or go against us. We do know that they have high technology to see what is going on.

AB: We have exactly the same problem. We're trying to understand the nature of who these beings are. All right, we are at the bottom of the hour, so everybody can relax for a few moments. We are being honored with the presence of two Hopi Elders, Grandfather 1 who is speaking Hopi and Grandfather 2 who is translating for us. They're in the Phoenix, Arizona area. In the Black Hills of South Dakota, we have Robert Ghost Wolf and we are discussing the details?...specific details?...of Hopi prophecy, something many did not want done on national radio or national anything. I'm Art Bell and this is "Coast-to-Coast AM."

(Break)

AB: Alright, back now to my guests, Robert Ghost Wolf in the Black Hills and Grandfather One and Two, in Phoenix, Arizona. Here is, I guess, a hard question but one that I should ask. I understand that Native Elders speak about prophecy through the tradition of story telling and I guess there are stories that relate to something called the 'Purifier'. Is there some way that Grandfather could explain to us a story about what the 'Purifier' is and, perhaps, a little bit of the story. Is that an okay question?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: The story about that is that we do know that we did have a brother who was set out and he is out there and with that brother and, from the Society of the One Horned Clan, they made a pact that....from the One Horned Clan and the Society and the brother had made like a....it's a law that the purifying time would come. This was already done, it was like it had been already organized and it was, you know, established.

GW: Like a contract.

G2: The stories that there will be come a time that whoever is going to come and, you know, to purify the people.....I'm having a hard time,' here.

AB: I understand. It is hard to translate this.

G2: Ya.

GW: Sometimes there are not words that translate to English.

AB: I understand. Maybe I could ask this. What is the 'Purifier'? Is the 'Purifier', is it the Hopi Prophecy or is the 'Purifier' something specific? Is it a comet or is it something from the heavens or how may we know what the 'Purifier' is?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: The 'Purifier' is mentioned is the other brother that was sent forth, out to the East, and this was the teaching that he had. . . .that he was sent of to the East and he would reach the point of origin where the Sun would come out from. When he reached that place, then he would touch his head to the Earth and he would return back to us. When this, you know, time comes that's the end of....the end times....time for a purification time when he will return back. He is the one that has the....in a way, you know. . .the weapons or the artillery and he is the Big Brother so he would know what to do and how he would help us and how we would go about in having to make us understand. His job is to make us understand and try to get ourselves to behave in the way that we're supposed to and, if we don't, then the one from the West will come and they are the ones that are going to come with much force. He, the 'Purifier', the one that went to the East, is supposed to be big enough to take on the ones that are coming from the West. That is going to become like the Third World War.

AB: Third World War, is the 'Purifier'. Ahight, he has talked much....Grandfather has talked much about corruption. In our cities and in our small towns.....and I do not know about your reservations.....but in our cities and small towns, we have, now, many, many stories of children going to school and shooting other children and teachers and their parents. Things that we cannot seem to understand, at all. Does Grandfather have any idea why these things seem to be happening in our society?

GW: We also might want to see if Grandmother might like to speak on this subject.

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: You know, in the cities itself, what's going on..... what you mentioned. . . .yes. these are part of the teachings and the prophesies that, when we get to these end times, you know, we're all going to start going corrupt. Even, you know, the children because they don't really believe in anything, even what we're trying to teach them and what we try to talk to them about. You know, they look at you but they have a different opinion about these things and they don't believe that. It's hard to try to teach the young ones and even grown-ups, even

adults, are in the same situation. It's not just the children who are in this kind of situation, right now, it's even the adults who are in that kind of situation and, you know, there's a lot of corruption in this way, but we do know that these things would start to take place in the school systems and all over where even young children would start to take lives, like that, because it is just a corruption of the mind from the way things are going, right now.

Grandfather One speaks to Grandfather Two.

G2: Even the children will go against their own parents. These are the things that have been taught. They're all going to start turning against their own parents and that's what's happening, that's what you're seeing out there.

AB: Yes, we are. Grandfather talked about corruption. Is it reasonable to ask this? Could this be happening to us, also, because we have reached a fantastic level of technology and have changed from spiritual to materialistic human beings, where our technological knowledge exceeds our spiritual wisdom? Can you translate that?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: Yes. He feels that, that is happening, there, that we're misleading ourselves from that, from the material side of it and walking away from the spiritual sense of it.

AB: Has this, also, occurred with the Hopi Nation? It is occurring, of course, in this country....in the cities....in the small towns,....this move to materialism, but has it also been occurring within the Hopi Nation?

G2: Yes, it is happening there, too. Yes.

AB: Do Grandfather's people believe that it is worthwhile stockpiling food and water or are these changes going to be so big that is simply, really doesn't make much difference, one way or the other?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: Ya, he does know that it is known that we should, you know, stockpile our goods . . . . our dry goods . . . . and it's been taught from long time....way back. That's why we should never forget, you know, about farming and how to take care of ourselves because you never know when it will hit and that's why they teach us these things, as young. Also, to answer the end part of your question, it is worth doing that. When the time comes, it may not be, you know, such a good idea to do that but it's worth trying to do something like that because they say that, you know, the time in their limitation is at least a month to two months that we will be without food and water so

we need to store away as much as we can for that amount of time. We have different clans who are supposed to take care of these situations. About the food items and things like that, there are certain clans that do have that power and authority over that but the majority of the people, out home, they have walked away from their teachings and they've walked away from their spiritual side of it. They've forgotten that and....I guess I could say that they really haven't forgotten it but they've just ignored it and now they will have to suffer the consequences.

AB: Alright, I think that we probably don't have time for another translated question before the top of the hour so, hold on in Phoenix. We're very honored to have you with us. Robert, is there anything that you can think of that we should be asking when we come back?

GW: I would suggest that we ask Grandmother if she would like to speak on some of these matters.

AB: Alright.

GW: I think that would be a good thing and, perhaps, we could ask her again about the children or what we can do for our children and then possibly go into what is meant by the emergence of the 5th World and what we're going to.

AB: And, also, I guess we might endeavor to ask whether Hopi Prophecy tells us anything about what is going to happen after the Purification, after the changes.

GW: What will life be like, then?

AB: That's right, so that is exactly what we'll do. Alright, everybody, I'm Art Bell and I don't think this has every been done before and we're trying to do it, tonight. You are listening to two Hopi Elders from the Sinom, in Arizona. You're listening to Robert Ghost Wolf who is in the Black Hills of South Dakota. I'm Art Bell, in Pahrump.

AB: Alright, back now to Robert Ghost Wolf in South Dakota, in the Black Hills. Robert, are you there?

GW: Yes, I'm here.

AB: Alright, you suggested that we speak with Grandmother about the problem with the children. So, let us do exactly that and ask Grandmother, if she is there, the same question. We have so many children, now, that seem to be turning against their parents....turning against their teachers/....and turning against other children, in fact, killing them. Some people have looked at our children and said that they seem like human beings with no soul....with no spirit....within them. What is happening to us?

GM: Okay, I'll try my best. Well, nobody teach the children, anymore, about the spiritual pathway so

they're turning against one another. The mothers are so busy working, you know, they teach their children at home so they're being left out and they no longer get that love from a mother like they're supposed to. It's really sad to see what is going on out there.

AB: Do you also believe, as we have heard from Grandfather One, that Hopi Prophecy is now telling us that the end times are very, very near.

GM: Yes, uh huh. Yes, that is true.

AB: Robert, anything?

GW: Grandmother, what words can we share with some of the mothers that are out there watching these conditions? There are so many mothers who seem to wonder what they can do and how they can help their children. Do you have any words that you can share with these mothers?

GM: Well, praying . . . first is praying . . . and to go through that path with the Creator. We have forgotten how to walk that path so they need to get on that path to survive.

AB: Okay, that seems quite clear to me. Alright, then, Grandmother, thank you very, very much Thank you for coming on.

GM: Uh huh.

AB: And I think, now, that we need to go back to Grandfather because I want to ask the Grandfather....he has talked to us much about what is the prophecy of what is coming and coming very soon. So, it is a very important question, I believe, to pose and the question is. . . after the purification, after the purifying, after the changes, after the war....what will the world be like?

Grandfather One and Grandfather Two converse in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: Well, the outcome of this, after that purifying time, the lifestyle will change....more or less. Those people or those ones that have been working, you know, with the evil or and the dark side are going to be eliminated. Only those that are walking on the one path and believing in that one and with a good heart, those are the ones that are going to continue this and there will be some....what you would say....there might be some people who have the minds that are like the scientists that can develop things. Right now we are not supposed to be taking the minerals out of the Earth for any reason at all, you know. Only certain minerals but only for the amount that you need, that's what was taught. But other than that, we're not supposed to reap the Earth, you know, and tear it up like that...what we're doing now. Like intermarriage, it's not supposed to be done. Only after purification time will intermarriage be possible, you know, that we can start to marry other people....other walks. This is, you

know, when the people will come together after purification time and all walks, that have been spared, will come together and one language will be spoken. There will be one law and it has been taught to say that, you know, some people say that it's gonna be their language or it's going to be the Hopi language that's going to be spoken but this is, you know, something that is not very known as to what language will be spoken but there will be one language that will be spoken. Togetherness is what will come about where we're going to come back to what was once before. What Adam and Eve came upon was, you know, was the Garden of Eden where everything will be flourishing, even, you know, the flowers and the vegetation. Everything will be back to normal but from thenceforth we are allowed to do these things and we can take the minerals out of the Earth, to use for a purpose, and not to really destroy it, though.

Grandfather One comments

G2: And all the....he mentioned, also, which I forgot to mention..... was the altars and the shrines, of the different societies, will be eliminated and all those will be, you know, have to be put away because they will no longer have power and authority over anything so these will be eliminated.

AB: Will there be a single power or a single authority or a single law or will everybody simply understand, inside themselves, that we are now one? There are many who talk, in our world, about a single world government....a single world ruler. Is that what Grandfather is speaking of?

G2: Yes, but not in the fashion that we understand it, now..... what they're talking about....the New World Order. Bee, that's more or less in a dictatorial form but this is done in a way, you know, where freedom is an essence.

AB: Alright. Grandfather spoke about World War III. I would like to be clear about this. Does he see men killing men . . . humans killing humans . . . or does he just see explosions and fire? Is that what he calls World War III?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: What you had mentioned about which one is, you know, the one that's going to be...he said that the taking of lives, you know, this is what will take place because it will be like an elimination of good from the bad. He mentioned about Hitler, you know, that Hitler had done a lot....done away with a lot of people, too, and when that took place, he said that many of the people were....many of the Hopi had realized this and they were glad that this took place because it was a teaching that took place. It was trying to teach the people that

this is what is going to happen, see, so look at this as more or less as a warning that this will take place, again.

AB: A **warning** of a Holocaust.

G2: Yes. So, there will be lives lost. A lot of lives will be **lost**.

AB: Does Grandfather understand how some lives **will** be saved while other lives will be spared with so much fire and war? I guess the question is, will it be like an **Anti-Christ** which some people think will arise, soon....in our world, an Anti-Christ. I don't know if the Hopi have any similar prophecy regarding one who will come, like Hitler, again.

Grandfathers One and Two converse in the Hopi Tongue.

AB: Grandfather, I'm sorry, I must interrupt. Please apologize for me. We are on a break, now. If he could finish the answer and we will get the answer when we come back. Would that be **alright?**

G2: Okay.

AB: Okay, thank you. Breaking right here. This is Coast to Coast with Art Bell.

AB: **Alright**, we are back now with our guests and we had asked a question about the '**Purifier**'....**about** what we **call** the Anti-Christ and whether the Hopi have or understand there to be such a being, coming. Do you have that answer, now, Grandfather Two?

G2: Yes. He mentioned that, yes, the Anti-Christ, that there is, you know, that he is coming again but there have been a lot of people that have walked away from **that....from** the teachings and walked away from their spiritual path. They went and decided to do something else, you know, rather than having to walk that and he will come in again and he is the one that is going to set us straight, again, on this thing here.

Grandfather One speaks to Grandfather Two in Hopi.

G2: The teachings are that the Creator, itself, what we talked about....the **Christ....it's** the same thing. What life that we're supposed to lead, we've strayed away from it what he....we told him that we would follow him in the same way and, if we **walk** away from these teachings then, he was **the one** that was living that and walking that. Then he gave us a choice to do that, also, and if we disregard everything that was taught to us **and** we walked away from it. He will come back in and step in and take it over again back for himself because he had mentioned that he was the first and he will be the last. So, this is what will happen.

AB: **Alright**, I have a question. People are sending me faxes and this is a fax I have received. "Given that we are in the end times, and that there will be much

turmoil, violence, death and destruction....is there anything that we, the living, can do to prepare our souls for the long, long path that we will all walk down after our physical lives end?"

Grandfathers One and Two confer in the Hopi language.

G2: **Ya**, our teachings that were given to us, we've strayed away from it and how we are supposed to, you know, alleviate a lot of some of these things and it's going to be too late for us to try to turn around and walk that spiritual path because we are taught that we are supposed to be on that path from way back. We should have been changing ourselves quite a number of years back because it doesn't take over night for a person to change . . . . to walk a path . . . . the chose path. Also, it doesn't take over night for the Creator to believe in you. He has to look at you, you know, your heart is the thing that has to change and it's not going to change over night, These are the things that are very hard to change on a person and so right now we look at it that it is already too late to start changing.

AB: Okay, I think that is very **clear....too** late. May I ask about the kachinas. What are the kachinas and what do they mean to us, today?

Grandfathers One and Two talk back and forth in the Hopi Tongue.

G2: These spirits that we **talk** about, are in a sense, the teachings **but** we can't go into detail of who they are.... what they are. I **mean**, you know, because only an initiated person should know about the knowledge of these but the only thing we can say is that they are spirits and that they are out there and they have their own home. Throughout the years, our elders of the different villages, you know, have been working with the spirits and making the prayer feathers for them and asking for their power to come in and bring in the rain for the crops because we don't have any way of irrigation our fields. We live in a desert area. This is a chosen area because the Hopi had been know to survive in an arid place. Hopi has been know that they would strive and survive, even in a desert place where there is no water really available for those kinds of **things**. So, they ask, through prayer, to **ask** their crops to survive and this is a **strong sense** of spirituality of the Hopi.

AB: And it is to these kachinas that you pray?

G2: Yes. They come in the form of clouds.

AB: Would you ask Grandfather, this. **Earlier** we asked him about the Sun and he said the Sun would **shift** on its axis. There are many who think these Earth changes that are so imminent, now . . . . so soon . . . . will mean that the Earth will also change on its axis in response to what the Sun does. Now, the question is, is there anything in Hopi prophecy about changes in the pattern of the stars



because that is what we would see after an axis change here on Earth? Would the stars look different?

Grandfathers One and Two converse.

G2: Yes, he believes that the axis of the Earth itself will change, also.....shift....and that will cause a lot of Earth changes, itself, also. About the stars that you mentioned, there have been a lot of stories about these things and they pertain to a lot of what happened with the stars, too. He says he doesn't know exactly but it's true that a lot of what happened with the stars and different things....the patterns . . . . are true and now they talk about these things as just like stories and like fairy tale stores but most of them are true. He doesn't know exactly what will take place out there, again, if that should every happen.

AB: Alright. Would you ask Grandfather to give us some few things that we should all watch and look for to happen in the next say . . . . . 18 months . . . . . or year and a half.

Grandfathers One and Two confer.

G2: Okay, he says that these earthquakes are imminent but there is no real date as to when these will take place. That big earthquake that was supposed to hit California had been altered, in a way, by the Tibetans who had

heard about that and they did a lot of prayers there and they helped in altering the intensity of the earthquake that took place in California. That is, you know, something that we should look for is a large earthquake that would take place. It's going to be real big. It's going to be devastating.

AB: Alright, we are running out of time and I would like to say it has been a very, very great honor and you will need to translate once we're off, for me, to have you and to have Grandfather One and Grandmother on the program, this morning. I would hope that, someday, if we have the time, that we could do this, again. It has been a very great honor and this message has gone out to many, many millions of people and we will all hope that the message is heard and that somebody . . . . . individually . . . . . many somebodies . . . . . will begin to make changes. We will pray for this. I want to thank you for being on the air with me, this morning. So, after we're off, will you translate all that for Grandfather?

G2: Okay.

AB: Again for all your help, I want to thank you so very, very much.

G2: Okay, thank you again for having us on your show.

## Statement by Martin Gashweseoma in Maniwaki, Quebec November 29, 1998

This is a statement given by Hopi Traditional Elder Martin Gashweseoma in Maniwaki, Quebec on Sunday, November 29, 1998 during ceremonies honoring Anishnabe Elder William Commanda. The speech was video-taped by the request of Grandfather Commanda, and it is with his permission that the following transcript was made. This statement was made on the second day of ceremonies, and followed a presentation of the Wampum Belts by Grandfather Commanda. Arvol Looking Horse spoke following Grandfather Gashweseoma.

Grandfather Gashweseoma's statement was made in Hopi and was translated by his son-in-law Emery Holmes. Unfortunately, the sound quality of the recording is very poor, and some portions of Emery's translation are unintelligible. These sections are shown in parentheses (---). Sometimes a word is shown in parenthesis indicating it is possible – but not certain – to be the word Emery used. Words or phrases that were emphasized are shown in *italics*.

The audience consisted of about three hundred people, at least half of whom were residents of Grandfather's home reserve: Kitigen Zibi Anishnabeg.

---

We all started out as one people at the beginning. Even you who are sitting among all the rest of you out there (and here). Right now we are all different from one another because of our language, because of our dress clothes, because of our hair. But that don't make no difference, because we came from one at the beginning. That's where we were all given our different dress codes, our different hair styles, our foods, what we are to live with. This was all given to us. So we all have different foods that we live with. The people up north here live with the salmon, and the caribou. Down south we live with the corn, the vegetables. Very seldom do we go out and kill a four legged. Most of our food supplies, corn, beans, you know, the different vegetables. But these were all given to each one of us; we were given these things at the beginning.

So don't lose faith in your teachings, what you've learned, daily, and from what your elders teach you. Don't lose faith in these things because we are still going further into this future which is not very much left of it. We are very close to it. That is the teachings that are going to be your basic tools, necessities so you can go into the next millennium.

We've all made our commitments with the Creator at the beginning. What the Creator had, what he worked with, how he lived his life. This was one of the things that he gave to us. He gave us this when he said that we were able to live under the *same simple* rules. They were very *simple*. There was no complications then, because all he had was his planting stick, and his- and these seeds. And we did make a commitment there that we would abide by these rules, laws of the Creator. But (with all that ignorance and greed) that we have, we've walked away from these teachings. We were never really given the full right to

the land. We were never really given this, because the Creator told us that we had other plans. We had other things on our minds. And he never chose anyone to be the leader. He said at the beginning that there are too many already out there who wish to be the leader. So now with this- with these (too many) people out there (when we say) there are too many chiefs, not enough Indians. That's what was already known by the Creator. So we have walked away from these teachings. We didn't abide by those things. We walked away.

So look back on your past. Look back at your cultures (and its) visions. Look back and realize for yourselves where you went wrong, what you can repair. And listen to your elders, what they teach you. And if you don't know it ask some questions.

What we went through in the past, (there is so) much that our elders have gone through. Through depression. (They lived) hard times. And what lies ahead in the future for all of us is even more worse. And if you think that these are just slogans, well you better start praying that you don't live to see it.

There are actually two paths that we are- that are in front of us. But there is also another, which is the third. We consider this third one a choice. The two paths: one is a path for all evil and all those that walk that evil way – they walk this path. And there is a true path: the path of honesty, the path of humbleness. The path that the Creator gives to all of us, that we are supposed to follow. The third path is for those that don't know which way to go. That are lost. Because they see some things on the evil path, which are deceptions. They pull you away from the true path. The true path, the humble path, the simple path. That simple path is a hard road. It's a rugged road. It's not so much as a path that is

walkable. You have to (go through) a lot. A lot of hard time, a lot of insults. Places where you think it isn't possible to cross. But there is always a possibility when you believe in the Creator. (The other) path, with lies and deception, is a smooth path. (----- out there.) The one in the middle you (can't) make a choice there. And that is not even a path, because you don't know which way to go. And at the end, you will not be (accepted either) because that path is only going to lead you to the other path, the smooth path. Because your heart, and your mind, and your soul, is undecided. And we can't pull you to that true path, the humble path, the simple path. We can't force you (-----). That's a choice that you have to make by yourselves. That's a choice that should have been made a long time ago.

As I have said earlier, this land is not really rightfully ours-yet. At the beginning (when we made that) agreement with the Creator. So now, there is a lot of work being done (up there,) a lot of things that are being worked on. Many things are being pushed on to the native people. They say that they are not living the right way. It's like their sewers that are pushed on you. They say they're living unsanitary lives. And the electricity, also coming into your villages. That is destroying you. These are- are some of the things that are pushed upon us. And we have been fighting these things for some time, at our own home (we've been trying to fight.) Because we don't want these accommodations coming in. Because the government has its own way of taking over land. And once this line get in, it becomes a network. And (when that ---- -) network (fully covers) the whole village - the area where you are living - it becomes like a rug. And that rug can be pulled out from underneath you.

Like I said, all these things - our beliefs - we try to fight for these things. And from way back, everything that was being forced upon us, we tried to resist. But many of us were dragged around - literally speaking, We were dragged around because we didn't want to go to school. They dragged us there.

That is what I have gone through. I (-----) live this kind of life. I was dragged around, too. And that's one of my reasons - because of my beliefs - that I did not want my children to go to school either. I did not want them to be (educated -- ----). So they took them from us too. And I have learned a little - very little - of the English language. So I can speak fluently with you if I need to.

So with that, I **never** had a job. I never had a paying job anywhere in the white man's world. Like any employment of any kind, anywhere. The only employment was my own. I employed myself in my fields which was taught to us in our way to survive. I raised sheep. I herded sheep to provide the meat for my family.

So we really haven't seen what lies in- in the future for us; what lies at the end there. But from what the elders talk about, they say we're going to see starvation at the end. So I (want -----). (I want all you people) to store food away, get ready, because it's coming.

So don't waste your food. Even if it's- if you had it for lunch or for dinner, reboil it. You can have it the next day again. It will never go stale on you if you keep boiling it.

So store your food away. Bury it because that's what we were taught. In a safe place, where it's easily accessible. But don't let anybody know where you buried it. That's how bad it is going to get. Even your neighbors. Even your friends. Because this is something you're (keeping) for yourself and your family: how to survive. It will become that bad. Because the elders have seen this happen before. They stole from (each other). And if you find somebody stealing your food because you let somebody else know, you are not going to survive. A lot is at stake (here -----).

Again, I would like to (emphasize) the point to put the food away, not waste it. We'll go through - what the elders say - about two months, two moons, of this stage where we will not even be able to go outside of our own homes. We're going to get stuck in there. You're going to have to find a way of getting to that food that you have stored away. But do it in a way when nobody else is watching.

There is a lot that is still in store for us. We don't mean to be scaring you, or anything, but that is the way it is. That's how it is. There is much that will happen. What you're seeing is only the forefront of the storm. You're seeing volcanic activity. You're seeing some flooding. You have witnessed through the window - what you **call** the television - what happened down in South America, down in Mexico (--). You've seen many people go. This is only the forefront of the storm. **They're** going to get **bigger**. They will **intensify**. Last year - of this - what you have seen - is only a warning sign. It was telling you to get ready - when you had the big freeze - you know what you all went **through**.<sup>8</sup>

So all of these are warnings. And what will appear before you are signs that are going to wake you up - open your eyes. They be before you. Every step you take, and every move you make, it's going to be a sign there. Read the signs. Learn to read those things. They're out there.

<sup>8</sup> This is a reference to the severe Ice Storm which struck Canada early in 1998. All over Canada utilities, services and transportation were shut down for weeks. Residents of Maniwaki reported that their food stores were without stock for *three weeks*.

So if by chance any- anybody out there will absorb this - **fully** - into their hearts, into their mind, into their soul, we'll be forever grateful to you because you are (----- -- - -----).

I used to never believe what the elders talked about when I was young. They talked about all of these things. All the things that are happening now. They used to talk about these things. They said that there will come a day when these will start to happen. But from way back, it wasn't this bad. They didn't go through those things from the start. And all of a sudden, things start to change. And now that I am seeing many of the things that the elders talked about, I believe in my heart that it is true what was taught to me. So I stand here before you teaching the same things that's been (taught to me). The same things that were told to me by my elders and by my (peers).

As you all may be aware, there are- there are many places throughout the world that you see writings on the walls. The petroglyphs. These were put there from way back because our people were told to leave the signs behind. To leave some of the prophecies behind, so that they will be there as proof and evidence of what we went through, and where we are headed. And the elders used to talk about that, that some day the rock will speak. And that is exactly what these petroglyphs are doing. If a person knows what that writing is about, (----- --- - -----) speaking to you, because you can interpret the story of the **wall**, if you are able to.

We have listened to the elders a lot - from way back - what they **talked** about. What lies in the future. But many of us are afraid (-----). We have fear in our hearts. But we have to set aside these fears, in order that we can move on forward. Because we have to look at our younger generations that are yet to come. They may not see it-they may not see all of it. We may not even see some of (the elements) that are supposed to come in because we are so close to that time.

All these teachings that we do, that we share, with people all (over) - **all** the elders (-----) have great teachings, not just us. (But other) elders - like William - and other elders. That go out of their way to do this where they could be doing something else with themselves, productive, being productive. But they go out of their way to go out, to give hope, to (serve) the peace and to (spread) their religions, their knowledge. That whosoever out there has the heart and the courage will answer their prayer and help (us get)- and help the rest of the world by (taking a -----) out into the next millennium.

All these teachings that we are talking about here today. I'm speaking **also** to the gentleman who is video-taping this - if you have intentions of selling this, you have to think twice. Don't **make profit from this**. Because these

were the teachings from the elders. Prophecy is not to be sold. It is like the land. We do not sell that land. Because it is still not rightfully ours. We are keepers, we are caretakers. We are watching this land for the Creator. That was (----- --- -----) we made with the Creator. Let us leave it that way.

Like I said, this land isn't for sale. The prophecies aren't for sale. (We didn't come --- --- -----). What we (**made** --- --- -----) as one people. And the elders know (me-- -) that one day, we would become greedy. We're going to have to have some loose change in our pockets. Because we have become so attached to the face value of that metal, that little piece of paper with these numbers on it. But soon that little paper is going to phase out. It will become obsolete.

And again I will say, if there is someone out there who will take all of this into consideration - all the words, all the (many things) that have been received. And your heart is in the right place. That person will take us into the next millennium, because that person will have the pure heart. That's what it's going to take. One that has not been infected with greed or anything else like that. The elders talked about this. They said that there is going to be someone-it could be anybody, any walk It doesn't necessarily have to be a Hopi. It can be anybody. It can even be a child. It can even be an infant. An infant is the best one because that's so pure. (----- -- --- ---). They're innocent.

Like I said earlier, the path, the wide path, the smooth path - there is too much out there that's pulling us (-- • --- -----). But we were taught not to go to that. But we (have fallen). We fell down by going to that side. So it's very bleak; it's very hard to see just where we are (getting ourselves right now). But just remember, try to keep your heart the way you want to (-- -----). Because it is your own heart - what it's telling you. Follow your own heart. That's (----- ----- to do the right thing).

We went through this - same things - in the prior world. The world before this one. And the people in that world went through the same things - what is happening with us here again. And we were told not to fall again back into the same trend. Not to make the same mistakes. But we have fallen, because of the strong pull of the other side.

So with these teachings that we have left to you, take care of your lives, take care of your house. In the same way that I do. I go out and make my **prayers** almost every morning. And do the same. Make your prayers. When I make my prayers, it is not only for myself, **but** all my friends that I have come to know. Those that have become very close with (us). And there are many out there. So I want you all to do your prayers. Ask for forgiveness, ask for (good health). Ask that you see the

light at the end of the tunnel. For (we [he?]) will be the light wherever (we [he?]) goes.

This is not my mind, not my thinking. This is not my words. These are the words of the elders from way back. I am only speaking for them. What was spoken to them before their time. And I (-----) also again emphasize to you to (get out) and do your prayers.

I would like to take this time to thank you again for **allowing** us to speak to you. And (-- just a little bit --- - to tell you) that yes there is that time of purification. But we **all** know that there is life after death. We will be reincarnated. In our beliefs, the woman has four reincarnations. The man has two. So *make good use of it, men.* **(The audience laughs at this aside by Emery)**

Again I would like to express my thanks to all of you for giving us the time. There is so much to talk about. We could sit up here all day and **all** night (-----). But there are others that need to speak also. We'll give them this time. Thank you again.

**Emery concludes with remarks of his own:**

And thank you (again) for letting me speak in front of you for myself. And I would like to thank my Father-in-law for giving me the honor of being his interpreter and, you know, giving me the wisdom that I (----- know) and the knowledge. Because before I met him and his daughter, his family, I guess I was (-----). I didn't (know anything). I was not so (cool), you know. There was nothing up there. **{Emery points to his head.}** There was an empty shell up there. (Pretty much, you know.) But now, I feel there is something in there, a little bit. When I shake my head, it rattles. **{Laughter}** Maybe it has something in there. At least it rattles, you know. So I would like to, you know, express my thanks to my Father-in-law for allowing me to do this for him. Urn. I **know** (-- ----- I learned). But I'm grateful (--- -- ---) because it gives me an opportunity to (see) **all** of you. And also to speak **to**— speak to you from my heart. And I don't even understand what I'm talking about, really, you know, otherwise (I --- --- ----). But, ah, this was taught that we were supposed to be the minds, the heart, the tongue, the eyes for our elders. Not to go against them. Not to go against their wishes. Because many of the elders did not want those things because of their beliefs. What they believe (in), what they fought for. We need to let them see that. **So** if there is anybody out there who is young like me, fight *for them!*

## The Essence of Hopi Prophecy

Following is an excellent overview of Hopi Prophecy by Tom Tarbet. Tom spent many years studying with Hopi Elders, including Dan Katchongva, beginning in the early 1960s. Grandfather David Monongye, editor of the traditional newsletter *Techqua Ikachi* even quoted from the following and attributed it to Grandfather Dan Katchongva. I found this on the Internet.

---

### THE ESSENCE OF HOPI PROPHECY

THE ENTIRE HOPI PROPHECY TAKES MANY DAYS  
TOTELLANDMANY LIFETIMES TO FULLY  
UNDERSTAND THIS IS A SUMMARY OF SOME  
ESSENTIAL POINTS.

This condensed version of the Hopi Prophecy is shared through the work of Tom Tarbet as taken from the original given way by DANAGYUMTEWA.

### THE BALANCE OF LIFE

As caretakers of life, we affect the balance of nature to such a degree that our actions determine whether the great cycles of nature bring prosperity or disaster. Our present world is the unfoldment of a pattern we set in motion.

Our divergence from the natural balance is traced to a point preceding the existence of our present physical form. Once we were able to appear and disappear at will, but through our own arrogance we took our powers as instruments of creation for granted, and neglected the plan of the Creator. As a consequence we became confined to our physical form, dominated by a continual struggle between our left and right sides, the left being wise and the right being clever and powerful but unwise, forgetful of our original purpose.

### THE CYCLE OF WORLDS

This suicidal split was to govern the entire course of our history through world after world. As life resources diminish in keeping with the cycles of nature, we would try to better our situation through our own inventions, believing that any mistakes could be corrected through further inventions. Through our cleverness, most of us would lose sight of our original purpose, become involved in a world of our own design, and ultimately oppose the order of the universe itself, becoming the mindless enemy of the few who would still hold the key to survival.

In several previous worlds the majority have advanced their technology in this way, even beyond what we know today. The consequent violations against nature and fellow humans caused severe imbalances which were resolved in the form of war, social disintegration and natural catastrophe.

As each world reached the brink of annihilation, there remained a small minority who had managed to live in nearly complete accord with the infinite plan, as

implied in the name, Hopi. Toward the final stages they would encounter signs of disintegration within, as well as enticing offers and severe threats from without, aimed toward forcing them to join the rest of the world.

### OUR PRESENT WORLD

Our common ancestors were among the small group who miraculously emerged from the last world as it reached its destruction, although they too were tainted with corruption. The seeds of the crisis we face today we brought with us when we first set foot in this world.

Upon reaching our present world, the Hopi set out on a long migration to meet the Creator in the person of Maasaw, the caretaker of this land and all the lives upon it. They followed a special pattern however a serious omen made a separate journey necessary, in order to balance the extreme disorder anticipated for the latter days.

### THE TRUE WHITE BROTHER

A Hopi of light complexion, now called the True White Brother, left the group and traveled in the direction of the rising sun, taking with him a stone tablet which matches a similar tablet held by those who went on to meet the Maasaw at a place called Oraibi, where the present Hopi villages were established according to his instructions.

The Hopi anticipated the arrival of a race of light-skinned people from the east, predicting many of their inventions which would serve as signs indicating stages in the unfoldment of the pattern of life the Hopi had studied from antiquity.

It was clearly foreseen that the visitors, in their cleverness, may have lost sight of their original purpose, in which case they would be very dangerous. The Hopi were to watch for one who has not left the spiritual path, and carries the actual stone tablet.

### THE SWASTIKA AND THE SUN

Through countless centuries the Hopi have previous worlds recalled in their ceremonies, our emergence into the present world, and our purpose in coming here. Periodically they have renewed their covenant with Maasaw to live the simple, humble way of life he laid out, and to preserve the balance of nature for the sake of all living things. The knowledge of world events has been

handed down in secret religious societies who keep watch as each stage unfolds.

The leaders watched especially for a series of **three-** world shaking events, to be accompanied by the appearance of certain symbols that describe the primordial forces that govern all life, from the sprouting of a seed to global movements such as weather, earthquakes, migrations and wars.

The gourd rattle is a key symbol. The shaking of the gourd rattle in ceremonies means the stirring of life forces. On the rattle are drawn the ancient symbols of the swastika or **meha**, showing the spirals of force sprouting from a seed in four directions, surrounded by a ring of fire, showing the encircling penetration of the warmth of the sun, tawa, causing the seed to sprout and grow.

The first two world-shaking events would involve forces portrayed by the swastika and the sun. Out of the violence and destruction of the first, the strongest elements would emerge with still greater force to produce the second event. When these actual symbols appeared, it would be clear that this stage of the prophecy was being fulfilled.

### THE GOURD OF ASHES

Eventually a “gourd full fox ashes” would be invented, which if dropped from the sky, would boil the oceans and burn the land, causing nothing to grow for many years. This would be a signal for certain **Hopis** to reveal some of their teachings in order to warn the world that the third and final event would happen soon, and that it could bring an end to all life unless people correct themselves and their leaders in time.

Hopi leaders now believe that the first two events were the first and second world wars, and the “gourd full fox ashes” was the atomic bomb. After the bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki, teachings formerly kept secret were compared and released to the world. The details presented here are part of those teachings.

### THE DAY OF PURIFICATION

The final stage, called the Day of Purification, is described as the hatching of a “mystery egg” in which the forces of **meha** and tawa unite with a third force symbolized by the color red, culminating in either total rebirth or total annihilation -- we don't yet know which, but the choice is ours. War and natural catastrophe may be involved. The degree of violence will be determined by

the degree of inequity caused among the peoples of the world and in the balance of nature. In this crisis, rich and poor will be forced to struggle as equals to survive.

That it will be very violent is now taken for granted among Traditional Hopi, but humans may still lessen the violence by correcting their treatment of nature as well as each other. Ancient spiritually based communities, such as the Hopi, must be preserved, and not forced to abandon their way of life or the resources they have vowed to protect.

### THE FATE OF HUMANITY

The Hopi play a key role in the survival of the human race, through their vital communion with the unseen forces that hold nature in balance, as an example of a practical alternative to the suicidal man-made system, and as a fulcrum of world events. The pattern is simple: “The whole world will shake and turn red, and turn against those who are hindering the Hopi”. The man-made system now destroying the Hopi culture is deeply involved in similar violations throughout the world. The devastating reversal predicted in the prophecies is part of the natural order. If those who thrive from **that** system, its money and its laws, can stop it from eliminating the Hopi way, then many may be enabled to survive the Day of Purification and enter a new age of peace. But if no one is left to continue the Hopi Way, the hope for such an age is in vain.

The forces we must face are formidable, but the **only** alternative is annihilation. Yet the man-made system cannot be corrected by any means that depends on forcing others to do one's will, for that is the source of the problem. If people are to correct themselves and their leaders, the gulf between the two must be eliminated. To accomplish this, one can only rely on the energy of truth itself.

This approach, which is the foundation of the Hopi Way, is the greatest challenge a mortal can face. Few are likely to accept it. But once peace is established on this basis, and our original way of life is allowed to flourish, we will be able to use our inventive capacity wisely, to encourage rather than threaten life, and benefit everyone rather than enrich a few at the expense of others. Concern for all living things will far surpass personal concerns, bringing greater happiness than could formerly be realized. Then all living things shall enjoy lasting harmony.

## Singing the Hopi Song of Purification

The following is an account of the singing of the Hopi Song of Purification. It is told here by Roy (Little Sun) Stevens, Roy, who is from Indonesia, is the adopted son of Titus Qomayumtewa, a much-loved Elder of Hotevilla who recently passed to the spirit world. One of Titus' duties was Keeper of the Song of Purification, which was to be sung only once:

---

“SHAKE THE ANTHILL”

Tell the world the truth about Creator's Law

The great wish of Titus Qomayumtewa, a Hopi Elder, was like so many who wish to live freely free and happy • that anyone who truly wants to be a Servant of the Creator of All • GOD • may attain Individual Sovereignty under His law. “Shake the anthill (world). Tell the world the truth about Creator's Law,” he often said. This global ceremony has been inspired by this simple Hopi farmer. As we look about our ‘anthill’ how can we deny the need to fulfill this honest desire?

Titus, one of the Jewels of the few remaining **Hopis**, had a most important spiritual destiny. At the time of the lunar eclipse on May **24, 1994**, Great Spirit visited Titus in his cabin. While the sun was setting, the cabin became filled with sparkling lights. The little stars finally settled around his head. On that evening a profound message came through...

‘THE TIME **IS** UPON US now to come forth and give of our knowledge to those willing to help the energies of Creator.

The path has been **constructed** of many different energies and elements that were placed together lovingly and with much hardship at the time. We transformed our nation many times because we were learning about our new home. We had to change with Earth as she guided us in our lifestyles and our foods. We gave ourselves to Creator, who gave back with abundance.

The path is now one of change. We are here in strength to help make that change smooth and peaceful, and assure that its energies are pure and its meanings are true. There have been - and will be again - great times of despair at the loss of culture, as those who resist change fight to hold on.

THE HOPI WAY WILL NEVER VANISH. It may undergo change now and then, which is important, but the Hopi Way remains in the land, rocks trees, animals, and all features of true creation. They **all** tell the story of the **Hopis**.

It is not limited to the **Hopis** either. The chance to change is everywhere now. Many avenues of discovery lead to the same conclusion. You will need to take time to listen.

You will need to **bridge** the gap between worlds and cultures **to** listen to us. We are ever strong, waiting to guide you.

The Hopi culture as it was is gone, but there are many wonderful things that can be created from that. Listen to the wind for direction, ask the fields for assistance. Feel the beating of the Hopi heart in everything you do, everything you feel, everything you touch, everything you say. You can have the magic we once shared. It is still there and always will be.

Be peaceful and trusting in your endeavors. We fought for many years to have peace for our people. We have presented ourselves to many who are able to maintain, and carry forth into the lives of the people, the peace we fought for. The history of our civilization is written in the earth, and anyone who gives of themselves to Creator can use this knowledge for Earth and her evolution.

We commend and comfort those who are powerful in their work to reunite, and we support and guide those wanting to make peaceful changes. There are several in your community who are holders of the knowledge. They are able to bring forth the message you strive for. They will surface at the right time.

Be not afraid of the future outcome. Focus only on what can be achieved right now, the fighting between nations will need to stop before order can be restored.

The beginning of the next phase will come in three cycles of the moon. You will have new direction, new focus, and new guidance. Be at peace with yourself and listen for our calling. The course is changing and the path is widening. There is much global concern for the return to purity, and the time is upon us to help activate the energy that can bring this return.

You will see changes in the community, the people you meet, and in the children. They may be confused at times as to why they feel a certain way, and want to know their history. Let them experience **this**, for **they** will be the ones who help bring forth the new Hopi light.

Be patient, but be strong. Guide and assist those who choose to help. **KNOW WE ARE WITH YOU!**”

Exactly three moon cycles later, a man in Maine had a serious dream. In the vision he went to the underworld



and heard an old man singing a most sacred, ancient song. Half way through singing it, the old man suddenly stopped, but Rusty (the dreamer) heard the rest of the song. When he woke up he felt a strong desire to find the old man and give him the last part of the song. He wondered who the old man was. How would he find him? Does he even exist?

Rusty consulted with a seer and was told to find Titus at Hopiland. Without hesitation he made the drive west, and was guided straight to Titus' farm. Upon arriving, Rusty conveyed his dream to Titus and delivered the rest of the song. Titus smiled and nodded happily. Indeed, four years earlier, at a Hotevilla meeting that was full of conflict between the "progressives" and the "traditionals", Titus had, at the beginning of the meeting, begun to sing. Ail Hopis present became panicked and urged Titus to stop singing. It was the long-awaited Purification Song that calls upon the Higher Forces, and is meant to be sung only once. "Stop singing Titus, it is not time yet. Stop, Stop, Stop!" But he didn't heed, and he kept on until he was half way through the song. Suddenly he stopped.

On August 22, 1994, at the full moon, the Purification Song became complete. At almost the same time the long-  
prophesied White Buffalo was born!

#### THE PASSAGE OF A HOPI MAN

Titus fulfilled his destiny and passed on one month later (September 28, 1994, on the birth day of Grandmother Caroline, Titus' very close clan sister). The next day a river of cotton clouds coming from the direction of the sacred San Francisco Peaks streamed light over Titus'

grave, moving toward the East. At the same time, with the rising sun a small cloud rose over the horizon and joined with the oncoming clouds.

On the fourth day after Titus' departure to the spirit world, Rusty had a Stone Lodge Ceremony at his home in Maine. He didn't know yet of Titus' passing, but he noticed something very strange and powerful happening during the ceremony. The gourd rattle given to him by Titus suddenly moved over the hot stones and kept rattling - and not by any physical hand. It rattled until the contents broke out. The next day after the lodge was dismantled, three waves of seven hawks each flew over the lodge into the southwest direction.

#### FOUR DAYS LATER...

. ...a special ceremony was held at Titus' cabin. There it was decided to use his moccasins in an East/ West Union Ceremony. Onemoccasin was to be placed at the Mountain, Fuji in Japan. On the day of the completion of the prophesied Atlantic/Pacific Cross American Walk, confirmation was given that the moccasin found its destiny on Mt. Fuji. Now the connection of the "extreme West" and "extreme East" must be globally advanced: The global participation in this is of great importance.

The East relates to the ancient past, the West relates to the present modern world. Now is the time for the end of the great experiment that has encompassed these two worlds, and the RETURN must be undertaken. This means that the East/West Union is of cardinal importance. It is the bringing together of all that has been learned throughout history up to this time from both "extremes".

## Birth of the White Buffalo Calf

Following is an article written about the White Buffalo Calf Prophecy and the birth of the prophesied White Buffalo Calf. This comes from the internet web site "Morgana's Observatory" (<http://www.dreamscape.com/morgana/index.htm>), an excellent source of a wide variety of prophetic material.

---

### The White Buffalo

Miracle: By Tom Laskin, Isthmus Newspaper, Madison, WI; Nov. 25-Dec. 1, 1994

"To tell the truth, the first time I looked out there, I saw a million dollars," says Janesville farmer Dave Heider as he watches Miracle, the white buffalo calf held sacred by Native Americans, chew contentedly on a mouthful of silage.

"But once I saw how much this little calf means to so many people, I couldn't see charging money for people to come and look at her. I mean how can you put a price on something that's sacred and holy? You know, if God meant for me to be a millionaire, I would have won the lottery."

Notes Dave Heider, "We made the front page of papers seven days in a row when O.J. didn't"

Naturally, an assortment of wealthy collectors and modern-day Bamums have also shown an interest in the calf. But the Heiders haven't tried to make money off the calf. Dave still drives a truck for the county (he'll go up to a 16-hour day when the snow begins to fall) and Val hasn't quit her janitor job. The couple has gotten into a little merchandising, but profits from postcards and T-shirts sold at the farm during weekend visiting hours go into a trust fund that will be used to maintain the calf and pay for such other expenses as the 9,000-volt electric fence that guards Miracle and the rest of the Heiders' 13-buffalo herd.

The Heiders knew from contacts in the bison industry that their calf was unusual; in fact, the Wisconsin Farmer and The Beloit Daily News both did stories about its birth. But it was only after the story got wider distribution that they learned Miracle was held sacred by buffalo-hunting Plains Indians, including the Lakota and the Cheyenne.

"The story hit the news wire on Wednesday, and the first Native Americans were here on Thursday," recalls Heider. "I think they were Oneida. They came from Black River Falls. We were up by the calf with some people and these Native Americans had been waiting for an hour, an hour and half. They asked our permission to see the calf and also pray to it and leave an offering."

News of the calf spread quickly through the Native American community because its birth fulfilled a 2,000-

year-old prophecy of northern Plains Indians. Joseph Chasing Horse, traditional leader of the Lakota nation, that 2,000 years ago a young woman who first appeared in the shape of a white buffalo gave the Lakotas' ancestors a sacred pipe and sacred ceremonies and made them guardians of the Black Hills. Before leaving, she also promised that one day she would return to purify the world, bringing back spiritual balance and harmony; the birth of a white buffalo calf would be a sign that her return was at hand.

Owen Mike, who's in line to succeed his 90-year-old father, Thomas, as head of the Ho-Chunk (Winnebago) buffalo clan, says his people have a slightly different interpretation of the white calf's significance. He adds, however, that the Ho-Chunk version of the prophecy also stresses the return of harmony, both in nature and among all peoples. . . .

"It's more of a blessing from the Great Spirit," Mike explains. "It's a sign. This white buffalo is showing us that everything is going to be okay."

Despite her enormous spiritual and cultural significance, Miracle isn't scientifically important. UW-Madison geneticist Dr. Richard Spritz, an expert in albinism and other pigmentation disorders, disputes news reports that the odds of a white buffalo being born are less than one in 10 million.

"In humans, the frequency of albinism in most populations is about one in 15,000, which turns out to be a pretty handy number for buffalo because the estimated number of them in the U.S. is something around 150,000. That means, that any given time, if the frequency of albinism in buffalo is similar to that in humans, there ought to be 10 white buffalo out there. And if there's some other way to have a white buffalo, there ought to be more."

So while the American Bison Association says the last documented white buffalo died in 1959, Spritz says the person who alerted him to Miracle's birth has tracked down six living white buffalo. He also notes that a stuffed white buffalo has stood in Harvard's Peabody Museum for years. (There's always some question whether a white buffalo is actually part cow, and therefore a beefalo. Dave Heider says he will allow Miracle's DNA to be examined in March, when it's time for her to be inoculated against various diseases.)

But even if other white buffalo have been born in modern times, Miracle holds special significance for Native Americans. She's female, and the bull that sired her died, just as in the prophecy. And, while recent visitors to the Heider farm are sometimes disappointed that the calf's head has turned brown and its body is now a silvery tan, versions of the prophecy state that the white buffalo calf would change colors four times, thus signifying the colors of the four peoples she would unify: black, red, yellow, and white.

Joseph Chasing Horse, in a phone interview from his home in Rapid City, S.D., adds that winter counts -which date the telling of the White Buffalo Calf Woman story in sacred ceremonies-confirm that this is the buffalo calf of the prophecy.

Moreover, the birth of Miracle on the Heider farm coincides with increased economic stability (thanks in large part to profits from Indian gaming) and cultural rejuvenation among Native Americans. For example, the Ho-Chunk (who this month received federal permission to restore their original name) have used gaming profits to establish Ho-Chunk language programs in their summer camp for teenage children and in four new Head Start centers. The tribe has also reacquired a tract of land that includes sacred sites on the lower Wisconsin River.

Larry Johns, a member of the Oneida tribe who works to preserve Indian mounds and other sacred sites, stresses the cultural importance of such recent discoveries as the Gottschall Rock Shelter in Iowa County, which includes a rock painting from CE 900 that tells a story still told by Ho-Chunk elders.

"My father and grandfather went to Indian schools, and they were beaten for speaking their language," says Johns, who along with fellow Oneida and representatives of other tribes has helped put together the new Native American Council of Madison, a group dedicated to promoting cultural awareness. "They tried to beat the Indian out of us. It's imperative that we go back to these stories and find out what they mean to us -- and who we are."

And how does Miracle fit into all of this? Says Johns, "There's so little understanding of Native American issues and ideas that any opportunity to get people interested -- even if it's just coming to see a white buffalo calf -- is a good thing."

Johns admits that seeing a key Indian prophecy fulfilled at a white couple's farmette on the banks of the Rock River at first seemed a bit bizarre. But the Heiders' eagerness to accommodate the people who came to pray to the calf eased his mind.

"Initially I was wondering: Why in Janesville?" says Johns, who rotates with other Indians in providing

security for the calf during visiting hours. "The place still has problems with the KKK. And, you know, it's just not the friendliest of places. Just about anybody else would be charging five, 10 bucks."

Dave Heider was impressed by the beauty of buffalo when he and Val got their first good look at a bull a few years ago at an exotic animal sale in Michigan. But the couple didn't get into buffalo farming because of romantic visions of the Great Plains turned black by enormous bison herds.

"We got into it more or less for retirement," Dave explains. "Something to fall back on, a little extra income."

"And the meat's very low in cholesterol," adds Val, a buffalo booster who echoes her husband's pragmatic take on buffalo farming. "You know, it's the only animal that doesn't get cancer."

But the buffalo isn't just a food source for Native Americans. Especially for the Plains Indians, it has always been a living, breathing sacrament. Unlike the soldiers and Wild Westerners who hunted North America's 60 million head herd to the brink of extinction in the 1890s, the Lakota and other Plains Indians never wasted any portion of the buffalo they killed. The buffalo provided them with food, shelter, clothing -- all the essentials of life. It was also a central part of their spiritual lives, and the hunt itself was a ceremony.

The Ho-Chunk hope to raise a herd on part of the 600-acre parcel they've purchased, with profits from their three casinos, on the lower Wisconsin River. And, along with renewed interest on the part of young people in their native languages and sacred ways, the rebirth of the buffalo herds is strengthening cultural awareness.

But building herds is an ongoing process, and Joseph Chasing Horse says much more must be done to protect the buffalo and their North American habitat:

"I would like to see something put into place where [the buffalo] would be able to regenerate their herds and be given more of their aboriginal migrating territory," he says. "Since the disappearance of the buffalo migration, we have felt the ecological impact that it is having upon the land. With the disappearance of the buffalo, there are certain medicines that no longer grow, and the Great Plains are being turned back into a desert)"

In recent years, non-Indians have also come to realize the profound influence of buffalo on the health of the land. A South Dakota ranch manager quoted in the National Geographic's recent cover story on the American buffalo says wider migrations could help solve water-management problems because the buffalo's sharp hooves

break up the soil and improve its ability to hold moisture.

Buffalo can live for nearly 40 years, which means the Heiders are likely to form much stronger bonds with the Native Americans they've come to know since August. And while the number of visitors who still trek to the farm to see Miracle has decreased since the weather got cold and her winter coat began to darken, Dr. Spritz and others say warmer weather may renew her whiteness. That second miracle of coloration would undoubtedly bring a second wave of attention to the calf and occasion more pilgrimages.

No matter what happens to Miracle in the coming months and years, Joseph Chasing Horse says the birth is a sign from the Great Spirit and the ensuing age of harmony and balance it represents cannot be revoked. That doesn't mean that the severe trials Native Americans have endured since the arrival of Europeans on these shores are

over. Indeed, the Lakota nation mounted the longest court case in U.S. history in an unsuccessful effort to regain control of the Black Hills, the sacred land on which the White Buffalo Calf Woman appeared 2,000 years ago.

Still, despite their ongoing struggles, Native Americans are heartened by the appearance of a white buffalo in Janesville, and have hope for a harmonious and prosperous future.

"Mention that we are praying, many of the medicine people, the spiritual leaders, the elders, are praying for the world," says Joseph Chasing Horse. "We are praying that mankind does wake up and think about the future, for we haven't just inherited this earth from our ancestors, but we are borrowing it from our unborn children."

Copyright 1994, Isthmus Publishing.

## The Story of the White Buffalo Calf Woman

Following is the story of how White Buffalo Calf Woman brought the pipe to the Lakota and sacred ceremonies to the Lakota. It is told by Joseph Chasing Horse who was in the Lakota delegation to the UN Cry of the Earth conference in 1993. This comes from the internet web site "Morgana's Observatory" (<http://www.dreamscape.com/morgana/index.htm>), an excellent source of a wide variety of prophetic material.

---

We Lakota people have a prophecy about the white buffalo calf. How that prophecy originated was that we have a sacred bundle, a sacred peace pipe, that **was** brought to us about 2,000 years ago by what we know as the White Buffalo Calf Woman.

The story goes that she appeared to two warriors at that time. These two warriors were out hunting buffalo, hunting for food in the sacred Black Hills of South Dakota, and they saw a big body coming toward them. And they saw that it was a white buffalo calf. As it came closer to them, it turned into a beautiful young Indian girl.

That time one of the warriors thought bad in his mind, and so the young girl told him to step forward. And when he did step forward, a black cloud came over his body, and when the black cloud disappeared, the warrior who had bad thoughts was left with no flesh or blood on his bones. The other warrior kneeled and began to pray.

And when he prayed, the white buffalo calf who was now an Indian girl told him to go back to his people and warn them that in four days she was going to bring a sacred bundle.

So the warrior did as he was told. He went back to his people and he gathered all the elders and all the leaders and all the people in a circle and told them what she had instructed him to do. And sure enough, just as she said she would, on the fourth day she came.

They say a cloud came down from the sky, and off of the cloud stepped the white buffalo calf. As it rolled onto the earth, the calf stood up and became this beautiful young woman who was carrying the sacred bundle in her hand.

As she entered into the circle of the nation, she sang a sacred song and took the **sacred bundle** to the people who were there to take of her. She spent four days among our people and taught them about the sacred bundle, the meaning of it.

She taught them seven sacred ceremonies.

One of them was the sweat lodge, or the purification ceremony. One of them was the naming ceremony, child naming. The third was the healing ceremony. The fourth one was the making of relatives or the adoption ceremony. The fifth one was the marriage ceremony. The sixth was the vision quest. And the seventh was the **sundance** ceremony, the people's ceremony for all of the nation.

She brought us these seven sacred ceremonies and taught our people the songs and the traditional ways. She instructed our people that as long as we performed these ceremonies we would always remain caretakers and guardians of sacred land.

When she was done teaching all our people, she left the way she came. She went out of the circle, and as she was leaving she turned and told our people that she would return one day for the sacred bundle. And she left the sacred bundle, which we still have to this very day.

The sacred bundle is known as the White Buffalo Calf Pipe because it was brought by the White Buffalo Calf Woman. It is kept in a sacred place (Green Grass) on the Cheyenne River Indian reservation in South Dakota. It's kept by a man who is known as the keeper of the White Buffalo Calf Pipe, **Arvol** Looking Horse.

When White Buffalo Calf Woman promised to return again, she made some prophecies at that time.

One of those prophecies was that the birth of a white buffalo calf would be a sign that it would be near the time when she would return again to purify the world. What she meant by that was that she would bring back harmony again and balance, spiritually.

Traditional Story copyright Joseph **Chasing** Horse, 1995.

## Jewish Prophecy: The birth of the Red Heifer

Did you know that the Jewish people have a prophecy about the birth of a sacred red <sup>cow</sup>? Or that the prophesied Heifer has been born? There are many remarkable parallels between the Hopi 'and Jewish peoples. This connection is between Jewish and Lakota prophecy. I find it very interesting that the Red race has a white buffalo while the White race has a red heifer. It seems the colors red and white are prominent during this time. In ancient Egypt, great significance was placed on the uniting of Lower Egypt (representing our lower, corporeal selves and symbolized by the color Red) with Upper Egypt (representing our higher, non-corporeal selves and symbolized by the color White).

This comes from the internet web site "The Temple Mount in Jerusalem" (<http://www.templemount.org/>) which has a great deal of information relating to Jewish attempts to build the prophesied Third Temple of Jerusalem.

---

### IN THE NEWS (AND ALSO ON THE PARSHA)

#### HOLY COW!

The birth of a red heifer (cow) in a farm in the religious youth village of Kfar Hasidim (near Haifa) has excited sectors in the religious community. A delegation of some 25 experts, including Rabbis Yisrael Ariel and Yoseph Elboim, visited the farm last week to examine the six-month old cow, and concluded that it is in fact an acceptable red heifer, according to Torah requirements. However, the cow must be at least two years old before it can be used. Until then, the cow will be carefully watched to ensure that nothing occurs to invalidate its status. According to Biblical law, the cow's ashes are used for purification from certain forms of impurity, and is therefore a prerequisite for the renewal of Holy Temple service. (Arutz-7 News: Tuesday, March 18, 1997)

#### RED HEIFER SIGNALS THIRD TEMPLE

The birth of a red heifer in Israel is being hailed by religious Jews as a sign from God that work can soon begin on building the Third Temple in Jerusalem. A team of rabbinical experts last week confirmed that the animal, born six months ago on a religious kibbutz near the north Israeli port of Haifa, meets the correct Biblical criteria for a genuine holy cow. According to the Book of Numbers (XIX: 2-7), the animal is needed for an ancient Jewish purification ritual.

"Speak unto the children of Israel that they bring thee a red heifer without spot, wherein is no blemish, and upon which never came yoke,"

says the fourth book of the Old Testament, also part of Jewish holy scripture, the Torah. The heifer will be slaughtered and burned, and its ashes made into a liquid paste and used in a ceremony which religious Jews believe

they must undergo before they can enter the old Temple site in Jerusalem to start building a new structure.

Since Herod's Temple was destroyed by the Roman emperor Titus in AD 70, no flawless red heifer has been born within the biblical land of Israel, according to rabbinical teaching. The birth of the animal, to a black-and-white mother and a dun-colored bull, is being hailed as a "miracle" by activists who want to rebuild the Third Temple and prepare the way for the Jewish messiahs entry to Jerusalem.

The faithful will need to wait until the heifer is at least three before it can be used in a ritual sacrifice. That would enable religious Jews to start the new millennium (a Christian event, but still regarded as portentous) in a state of purity. News of the red heifer's appearance, however, will not be well received by Muslims. The site of the old Jewish temples in the Holy City is now occupied by one of Islam's holiest shrines, the Dome of the Rock. Jewish extremists want to destroy the Dome and the adjoining Al-Aqsa mosque to make way for a new temple. In 1985 a group of Jewish terrorists were jailed in Israel for planning to destroy the Dome with high explosives.

But Jewish activists say they regard it as their divine mission to build a new Temple. "We have been waiting 2,000 years for a sign from God, and now he has provided us with a red heifer," said Yehudah Etzion, the ringleader of the Eighties' plot to blow up the Dome, who was present at last weeks inspection of the red heifer at Kfar Hassidim. "There were a couple of little white hairs which worried us, but the rabbis are satisfied that it is the red heifer referred to in the Bible," said Mr. Etzion. (SUNDAY TELEGRAPH (London) 3/16) (Quoted in THE MIDEAST DISPATCH, DAILY NEWS FROM ISRAEL - ISSUE 237 - 16th March 1997)

Noted Added from Christian Discussion Group: Of all the sacrifices offered under the Law of Moses there was none quite like the Red Heifer. In its limitations and parallels, the Red Heifer provides valuable insights into the redemption which God has provided in Christ Jesus. A study of the Red Heifer inevitably leads to a greater appreciation of the words of the Apostle Paul.

It was God Himself who chose to portray aspects of His great work of redemption through the Red Heifer. The writer to the Hebrews makes this apparent:

“For if the sprinkling of defiled persons with the blood of goats and bulls and with the ashes of a heifer sanctifies for the purification of the flesh, how much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without blemish to God, purify your conscience from dead works to serve the living God. ” ( Heb. 9:13,14, RSV).

The Red Heifer Its significance:

a) The significance of the sacrifice: The red heifer was a sacrifice designed to remove defilement through contact with human death. It is significant that the children of Israel had suffered the death of 14,700 rebellious Israelites by a plague (Num. 16:49 ). Under hot desert conditions the bodies would require immediate burial in graves. It was at this time that God gave the instructions to Moses and Aaron regarding the red heifer. The significance of the red heifer to cleanse from the defilement of death came at a most impressive time the connection between sin and death could hardly be more apparent!

b) The uniqueness of the sacrifice . In all of the sacrifices prescribed by the Mosaic Law, there was none quite like the red heifer. Note the following:

i. It is not listed with the other offerings in Leviticus or Exodus, but in the book of Numbers.

ii. It was a special sin offering. A sin offering was for a sin - i. e., a transgression, but the red heifer was a sin offering when no transgression had been committed. It was offered for contact with the dead whether purposeful or accidental.

iii. It was a sin offerings but it was not offered in the same way as the other sin offerings. The animal was slaughtered outside the camp, and the blood and the skin and the dung were all burned outside the camp. In the other sin offerings ( e. g. Lev. 4 ) the animal was slain inside the camp, the blood poured out at the base of the altar, and then the carcass was removed and burned outside the camp.

iv. It was the only sacrifice which could be used more than once. Its ashes were used repeatedly until depleted.

The instructions regarding the Red Heifer were given immediately after the plague in which 14,700 Israelites died. The association between sin and death was apparent. The nation was to bring the heifer, therefore it was a national offering. When the Lord returns, Ezekiel 39 tells us that it is going to take seven months to bury the dead bodies. Thus it would seem that the latter day offering of a Red Heifer by the Messiah will be to provide cleansing for the nation as they work at cleansing their land from all the dead bodies in it. (Thanks to Larry Ellison, [lellison@concentric.net](mailto:lellison@concentric.net))

## Native Prophecies by Lee Brown, Cherokee

Following are excerpts from a talk by Lee Brown, Cherokee, at the 1986 Continental Indigenous Council at Fairbanks, Alaska. The audience was primarily Native Americans. This comes from the internet web site "Morgana's Observatory" ([http:// www.dreamscape.com/ morgana/ index.htm](http://www.dreamscape.com/morgana/index.htm)), an excellent source of a wide variety of prophetic material.

---

'There was the cycle of the mineral, the rock. There was the cycle of the plant. And now we are in the cycle of the animal coming to the end of that and beginning the cycle of the human being. When we get into the cycle of the human being, the highest and greatest powers that we have will be released to us. They will be released from that light or soul that we carry to the mind. But right now we're coming to the end of the animal cycle and we have investigated ourselves and learned what it is to be like an animal on this earth.

"At the beginning of this cycle of time, long ago, the Great Spirit came down and He made an appearance and He gathered the peoples of this earth together and He said to the human beings, 'I'm going to send you to four directions and over time I'm going to change you to four colors, but I'm going to give you some teachings, and you will call these the Original Teachings; when you come back together with each other, you will share these so that you can live and have peace on earth, and a great civilization will come about.' And he said 'During the cycle of time, I'm going to give each of you two stone tablets. When I give you those stone tablets, don't cast those upon the ground. If any of the brothers and sisters of the four directions and the four colors cast their tablets on the ground, not only will human beings have a hard time, but almost the earth itself will die.'

"And so He gave each of us a responsibility and we call that the Guardianship. To the Indian people, the red people, He gave the Guardianship of the Earth. We were to learn during this cycle of time the teachings of the earth, the plants that grow from the earth, the foods that you can eat, and the herbs that are healing so that when we came back together with the other brothers and sisters we could share this knowledge with them. Something good was to happen on the earth.

'To the South He gave the yellow race of people the Guardianship of the Wind. They were to learn about the sky and breathing and how to take that within ourselves for spiritual advancement. They were to share that with us at this time.

'To the West He gave the black race of people the Guardianship of the Water. They were to learn the teachings of the water, which is the chief of the elements, being the most humble and the most powerful.

The elders have told me that the black people would bring the teachings of the water.

'To the North He gave the white race of people the Guardianship of the Fire. If you look at the center of many of the things they do you will find the fire. They say a light bulb is the white man's fire. If you look at the center of a car you will find a spark. If you look at the center of the airplane and the train you will find the fire. The fire consumes, and also moves. This is why it was the white brothers and sisters who began to move upon the face of the earth and reunite us as a human family.

"And so a long time passed, and the Great Spirit gave each of the four races two stone tablets. Ours are kept at the Hopi Reservation in Arizona at Four Corners Area on Third Mesa. I talked to people from the black race, and their stone tablets are at the foot of Mount Kenya. They are kept by the Kikuyu Tribe. I once had the honor of presenting a sacred pipe at the Kikuyu Tribe carved from the red pipe stone of Mount Kenya. I was at an Indian spiritual gathering about 15 years ago. A medicine man from South Dakota put a beaded medicine wheel in the middle of the gathering. It had the four colors from the four directions; he asked the people, 'Where is this from?' They said, 'Probably Montana, or South Dakota, maybe Saskatchewan.' He said, 'This is from Kenya.' It was beaded just like ours, with the same colors.

"The stone tablets of the yellow race of people are kept by the Tibetans. If you went straight through the Hopi Reservation to the other side of the world, you would come out in Tibet. The Tibetan word for sun is the Hopi word for moon, and the Hopi word for sun is the Tibetan word for moon.

"The guardians of the traditions of the people of Europe are the Swiss. In Switzerland, they still have a day when each family brings out its mask. They still know the colors of the families, and they still know the symbols, some of them. Each of these four peoples happen to be people who live in the mountains.

"So we went through this cycle of time, and each of the four races went to their directions and they learned their teachings. It was in Newsweek not long ago that eight out of ten foods that people eat on the earth are developed here in the western hemisphere because that was our Guardianship -- to learn the teachings of the earth and



the things that grow from the earth. We were given a sacred handshake to show, when we came back together as brothers and sisters, that we still remembered the teachings.

“It was indicated on the stone tablets that the **Hopis** had that the first brothers and sisters that would come back to them would come as turtles across the land. They would be human beings, but they would come as turtles. So when the time came close, the **Hopis** were at a special village to welcome the turtles that would come across the land. They got up in the morning and looked out at the sunrise. They looked out across the desert, and they saw the Spanish Conquistador-es coming, covered in armor, like turtles across the land. So this was them. So they went out to the Spanish man, and they extended their hand, hoping for the handshake. But into the hand the Spanish man dropped a trinket. And so word spread throughout North America that there was going to be a hard time, that maybe some of the brothers and sisters had forgotten the sacredness of all things and all the human beings were going to suffer for this on the earth.

“So tribes began to send people to the mountains to have visions to try to figure out how they could survive. At that time there were 100,000 cities in the Mississippi Valley alone, called the mound civilization: cities built on great mounds. Those mounds are **still** there. If you ever go out to Ohio or the Mississippi Valley, they’re tourist attractions now. There were 100,000 cities of Native people, and they were wondering how they could survive. They began to try to learn to live off the land because they knew a hard time was going to come. They began to send people to have visions to see how we could survive this time. They were told in the prophecies that we should try to remind all the people that would come here of the sacredness of all things. If we could do that, then there would be peace **on** earth. But if we did not do that, if we had not come together as a human family, the Great Spirit would grab the earth with His hand and shake it.

“And so if you read the treaty negotiations from Red Jacket of the Six Nations on the east coast of this land clear to Chief Joseph and Chief Seattle on the west coast of this land, they all said the same thing. Chief Joseph said, ‘I accord you the right, and I hope you accord me the right, to live in this land.’ Always we were trying to live together. But instead of living together, you all know there was separation; there was segregation. They separated the races: they separated the Indians, and they separated the blacks. In the state of Washington it was against the law for an Asian to marry a white person up until not too long ago. There was separation.

“The elders on the west coast prophesied that they would then begin to build a black ribbon. And on this black ribbon there would move a bug. And when you begin to see this bug moving on the land, that was the sign for the First Shaking of the Earth. The First Shaking of the

Earth would be so violent that this bug **would be** shaken off the earth into the air and it would begin to move and fly in the air. **And** by the end of this shaking this bug will be in the air around the world. Behind it would be a trail of dirt and eventually the whole sky of the entire earth would become dirty from these trails of dirt, and this would cause many diseases that would get more and more complicated. So the bug moving on the **land**, of course it’s easy to see now. In 1908 the Model-T Ford was mass produced for the first time. So the elders knew the **First** Shaking of the Earth was about to come about -- that was the First World War.

“In the First World War the airplane came into wide usage for the first time. That was that bug moving into the sky. And so they knew something very important would happen. There would be an attempt to make peace on earth on the west coast of this land, and so the elders began to watch for this. They began to hear that there was going to be a League of Nations in San Francisco, so the elders gathered in Arizona around 1920 or so, and they wrote a letter to **Woodrow** Wilson. They asked if the Indian people could be included in the League of Nations.

“At that time, the United States Supreme Court had held that a reservation is a separate and semi-sovereign nation, not a part of the United States but protected by it. This became a concern because people didn’t want the reservations to become more and more separate. They didn’t want them to be considered nations. So they did not write back, and the Native people were left out of the League of Nations so that circle was incomplete. In the League of Nations circle there was a southern door, the yellow people; there was a western door, the black people; there was a northern door, the white people; but the eastern door was not attended. The elders knew that peace would not come on the earth until the circle of humanity is complete, until all the four colors sat in the circle and shared their teachings, then peace would come on earth.

“So they knew things would happen. Things would speed up a little bit. There would be a cobweb built around the earth, and people would talk across this cobweb. When this talking cobweb, the telephone, was built around the earth, a sign of life would appear in the east, but it would tilt and bring death (the swastika of the Nazis). It would come with the sun. But the sun itself would rise one day, not in the east but in the west (the rising sun of the Japanese Empire). So the elders said when you see the sun rising in the west, and you see the sign **of life** reversed and tilted in the east, you know that the Great Death is to come upon the earth, and now the Great Spirit will grab the earth again in His hand and shake it, and this shaking will be worse than the first. So the sign of life reversed and tilted, we call that the Swastika, and the rising sun in the west was the Rising Sun of Japan. These two symbols are carved in stone in Arizona. When the

elders saw these two flags, they knew that these were the signs that the earth was to be shaken again.

‘The worse misuse of the Guardianship of the fire is called the gourd of ashes. They said the gourd of ashes will fall from the air. It will make the people like blades of grass in the prairie fire, and things will not grow for many seasons. I saw on television not too long ago that they were **talking** about the atomic bomb, the gourd of ashes. They said it was the best-kept secret in the history of the United States. The elders wanted to speak about it in 1920.

‘They would have spoken of it and foretold its coming if they could have entered into the League of Nations. The elders tried to contact President Roosevelt to ask him not to use the gourd of ashes because it would have a great effect on the earth and eventually cause even greater destruction and a Third Shaking of the Earth, the Third World War. **I’ll** get to that in a few minutes.

‘So they knew after the Second Shaking of the Earth when they saw the gourd of ashes fall from the sky then there would be an attempt to make peace on the other side of this land. And because the peace attempt on the west coast had failed, they would build a special house on the east coast of this Turtle Island, and all the nations and peoples of the earth would come to this house, and it would be called the House of Mica, and it would shine like the mica on the desert shines. So the elders began to see they were building the United Nations made out of glass that reflects like the mica on the desert so they knew this was the House of Mica, and all the peoples of the earth should go to it. So they met and talked about this. They said that in the **1920’s** they had written and they had not been responded to, so they said this time we’d better go to the front door of the House of Mica because things might get a lot worse.

‘So elders representing a number of tribes drove to New York City. When the United Nations opened, they went to the front door of the house of Mica and they said these words, ‘We represent the indigenous people of North America, and we wish to address the nations of the Earth We’re going to give you four days to consider whether or not we will be allowed to speak.’

‘They retreated to one of the Six Nations Reserves in New York State. The Six Nations Reserves are keepers of the Great Law of Peace of the prophet that appeared here in North America, Dekanwidah. And this Law of Peace is still recited; it takes four days between sunrise and noon. Each year an Indian, by memory, must recite it about this time of year. Four days later they came back, and I believe the nations of the earth heard that the Indians had come to the door. And they voted to let the Indians in. They wanted to hear what they had to say. But the **United** States is one of five nations of the United Nations with a veto power, and still they were concerned

because this time the Native sovereignty was even stronger. And I believe they vetoed the entrance of the Native people.

‘So then they knew other things would happen on the Earth, and the United Nations would not bring peace on earth, but there would be continuing and deepening confusion; the little wars would get worse. So they retreated to the Six Nations Reserve, and they talked about this, and they said the time is really getting close now -- 1949. They said, ‘We’re going to divide the United States into four sections, and each year we’re going to have a gathering. We’re going to call these the White Roots of Peace Gatherings.’ They began to have these around 1950. And they authorized certain people to speak in English for the first time about these prophecies.

‘One that I used to listen to many times, over and over, was Thomas Banyacya. He is a Hopi man. He was authorized to speak in English about what was on the stone tablets, and he has dedicated his life to doing this. And they began to tell us at these gatherings, they said, ‘In your lifetime you’re going to see things happen.’ It was strange when they said it in the 1950’s and **1960’s**, but now it seems very clear. But then it was unusual. They said ‘You’re going to see a time in your lifetime when the human beings are going to find the blueprint that makes us.’ They call that now DNA, deoxyribonucleic acid. They said, ‘They’re going to cut this blueprint.’ They call that **now** genetic splicing. And they said, ‘They’re going to make new animals upon the earth, and they’re going to think these are going to help us. And it’s going to seem like they do help us. But maybe the grandchildren and great-grandchildren are going to suffer.’ The elders said long ago, ‘They will release these things, and they will use them.’ This is going to be released not too long from now. They are making new animals. The elders talked about this. They said, ‘You will see new animals, and even the old animals will come back, animals that people thought had disappeared. They will find them here and there. They’ll begin to reappear.’ [This talk was given about ten years before scientists announced that they had cloned a sheep.]

‘They said, and I know many of you are from tribes that also have this prophecy, ‘You’re going to see a time when the eagle will fly its highest in the night, and it will land upon the moon.’ Some tribes say eagle will circle the moon. Some tribes say the eagle will fly its highest in the night. ‘And at that time,’ they say, ‘Many of the Native people will be sleeping,’ which symbolically means they have lost their teachings. There are some tribes that say it will be as if they are frozen: they’ve been through the long winter. But they say, ‘When the eagle flies its highest in the night, that will be the first light of a new day. That will be the first thawing of spring.’ Of course, at the first light of a new day; if you’ve stayed up all night, you notice it’s really dark. And the first light sneaks up on you. You want to **see it** change, but it’s dark,

and then pretty soon it's getting light before you know it. We're at that time now. The Eagle has landed on the moon, **1969**. When that spaceship landed, they sent back the message, 'The Eagle has landed.' Traditionally, Native people from clear up in the Inuit region have shared with us this prophecy, clear down to the Quechuas in South America. They shared with us that they have this prophecy. When they heard those first words, 'The Eagle has landed,' they knew that was the start of a new time and a new power for Native people. There was absolutely nothing strong before us now. We may do anything we wish.

"In 1776 when the United States Government printed the dollar, in one claw [of the eagle], if you've ever noticed, there is an olive branch. They said that represented peace. The Indian elders shared with me in South Dakota that to them that represents the enslavement of black people. In the prophecies of the Six Nations people they say there will be two great uprisings by black people to free themselves. We've seen one about 1964. There will be a second, more violent one to come. I'll get back to what that means in a minute. In the other claw is 13 arrows. The founding fathers of the United States said that represents the 13 States. But the elders say that represents the enslavement of the Native people. When the Eagle landed on the moon, they decided to print a special silver dollar to commemorate that. I don't know how many of you noticed it. The original design showed the spaceship landing on the moon, but at the last minute it was changed to an actual eagle. And in the eagle's claws is the olive branch, but the arrows are gone. The elders said, 'That's our prophecy — we have been released.' There was one more uprising coming for the black race of people, and then they will be released, and this is **also** going to have an effect on Native people, a good effect. There's a whole new set of prophecies from the Iroquois people about that, but I won't have time to go into that this morning.

"But we're in that time now. We're between the first light of a new day and the sunrise. The sunrise is about to come, and when it comes up everyone is going to see it. But you know how it is in the village: there are a few people that get up early, and there are some that sleep until noon. They said when that Eagle lands on the moon, the powers will begin to come back to us. As an alcoholic person, I feel that one of our greatest diseases is alcoholism. Within seven days of the time of the Eagle landing on the moon, the first Native alcoholism program was started on an Apache reservation in Arizona. Within seven days of the time the Eagle landed on the moon, the Freedom of Indian Religion Act was introduced into the United States Congress. Eventually it was passed in November of 1978, signed by President Carter, making the song that Kevin [Kevin Locke, a famous Indian Baha'i who spends his time traveling around the world sharing the North American Indian culture through dance and music] sang now **legal** to sing in every state of the United

States. At one time, singing a song or doing a sweat was punishable by going to jail for 10 years and/or a \$10,000 fine. This was changed in 1978; the legislation had been introduced in **1969**, less than seven days after the Eagle landed on the moon. These are the physical manifestations of the spiritual prophecies that we have.

"So he said at this time you're going to see that things will speed up, that people on the earth will move faster and faster. Grandchildren will not have time for grandparents. Parents will not have time for children. It will seem like time is going faster and faster. The elders advised us that, as things speed up, you yourself should slow down. The faster things go, the slower you go. Because there's going to come a time when the earth is going to be shaken a third time. The Great Spirit has shaken the earth two times: the First and Second World Wars to remind us that we are a human family, to remind us that we should have greeted each other as brothers and sisters. We had a chance after each shaking to come together in a circle that would have brought peace on earth, but we missed that.

"Tonight they were talking on the news about the sign for the Third Shaking of the Earth. They said they're going to build what the elders called the house in the sky. In the 1950's they talked about this: they will build a house and throw it in the sky. When you see people living in the sky on a permanent basis, you will know the Great Spirit is about to grab the earth, this time not with one hand, but with both hands. Many of you of Native background may have heard 'The spirits will warn you twice, but the third time you stand alone.' We've had two warnings, the first two World Wars, but now we stand alone in the third one. When this house is in the sky, the Great Spirit is going to shake the Earth a third time, and whoever dropped that gourd of ashes, upon them it is going to drop. They say at that time there will be villages in this land so great that when you stand in the villages you will not be able to see out, and in the prophecies these are called villages of stone, or prairies of stone. And they said the stone will grow up from the ground, and you will not be able to see beyond the village. At the center of each and every one of these villages will be Native people, and they will walk as hollow shells upon a prairie of stone. They said hollow shells, which means they will have lost any of their traditional understandings; they will be empty within. They said that, after the Eagle lands on the moon, some of these people will begin to leave these prairies of stone and come home and take up some of the old ways and begin to make themselves reborn, because it's a **new** day. But many will not. And they said there's going to come a time when in the morning the sun is going to rise, and this village of stone will be there, and in the evening there would just be steam coming from the ground. They will be as steam. And in the center of many of those villages of stone, when they turn to steam, the Native people will turn to steam also because they never woke up and left the village. And this

used to bother me when I was a young man I used to ask the elders, 'Isn't there anything we can do?' And they said, well, it's just that way that if a person does not have the spiritual eyes to see, it's very hard to show them. Or if they don't have the ears to hear, it's very hard to speak with them. We wish that we could go get them all but we can't. It's just that some are not going to wake up. But some will wake up.

"And so they say there's going to be the Third Shaking of the Earth. It's not going to be a good thing to see, but we will survive it. We will survive it. And when we survive it, then there's going to be another attempt to make a circle of the human beings on the earth. And this time the Native people will not have to petition to join but will be invited to enter the circle because they say the attitude toward us will have changed by then, and people will let us into the circle, and all the four colors of the four

directions will share their wisdom, and there will be a peace on earth. This is coming close. A lot of times when I share this message of the prophecies, people say, 'Can't we change it? Could we stop it?' The answer is yes.

'The prophecies are always either/or. We' could have come together way back there in 1565, and we could have had a great civilization, but we didn't. Always along the path of these prophecies, we could have come together. We **still** could. If we could stop the racial and religious disharmony, we would not have to go through this third shaking. The elders say the chance of that is pretty slim. It seems to me like it's pretty slim, too. But they say what we can do is we can cushion it. The word we use is cushion. We can cushion it so it won't be quite as bad. How do we do this? We do this by sharing the teaching that will reunite us.

## Tuscarora Prophecy by Mad Bear

**On October 11, 1969, Mad Bear, of the Tuscarora Nation, shared the following prophecy of the Ho-de-no-sau-ne (People of the Long House – the Six Nations Iroquois Confederacy) in the village of Hotevilla, Hopiland.**

---

I bring greetings from the Six Nations Iroquois Confederacy as a spokesman of the Tuscarora, Onondaga, **Cayuga**, Mohawk, Oneida and Seneca Nations. I bring greetings from the Confederacy Chiefs to the Chiefs of Hopi and to all the other people that are here today, from the Clan Mothers of our Six Nations to the Clan Mothers that are here, from the young people who are starting to stand up for land and life and truth to the young people here who are standing up for land and life and truth, and also from the little children that walk on Mother Earth to the little children here that walk on Mother Earth. I bring these greetings to tell you that this movement that is now circling this continent from North America, Central America and South America will never stop and is one that will unite all Indians. This has been prophesied by our people a long time ago when the Son of the Great Spirit came down with the law of the Great Peace. His name was Deganawida. He gave us this great law that one day we'll rule not only this great continent, but the world.

We call ourselves Ho-de-no-sau-ne, People of the Longhouse, meaning we are all brothers. We don't care if it's Hopi, Navajo, Paiute or whatever nation. We're all brothers. The Creator made us. Some day in this great life-plan that the Creator has given us we will all be one again. We all started from here, in Hopi country. Our laws were given after the Flood. We came out and went out over the land. And one day, our prophecy tells us, this land will be purified again and be returned back to our people for the evercoming generations of our children, their children and their children's children who are not yet born.

Time is short. This country is in great danger. The very foundations of the white man's government is collapsing-fast. Not only here, but in Canada. Not only in Canada, but around the world. A new light, a new vision is coming out now. It is up to our people to bring this out so that every people will understand that we still follow the ways of the Great Spirit. We have a very important job to fulfill. Do not ever abandon the sacred way of life. Do not ever abandon your traditions and instructions of the Great Spirit, because times are changing. According to our prophecy we're now in a new year where this purification is taking place. There will be earthquakes, there will be famine. There will be poisoning of the city waters-people wouldn't even be able to flush their toilets or cook their meals. There will be running and panic. They will be coming to wherever Indians are gathered. That is when the Indian has to

stand up on his two feet and be a man as the Creator had asked us in the beginning.

Every human being was created by the Great Spirit, and we can't hold malice in our hearts toward anyone. This is our way of life, this is our religion. The Great Spirit made the black man, the white man, the yellow man, the red man. If we were to condemn and beat these people or keep them away, we would be going against the Creator, because he created them. He created the birds, the trees, the flowers. He gave us the air we all breathe. And when these people come together in this great unity that is fast becoming a reality, it will be as brilliant as a rainbow after a gentle shower. This is the way we will come together-in peace. The governments of the world that are collapsing are those that have been blinded by the material things. The white man's money is going to fall very soon. So, the only way to survive, to save yourself, is to call upon the Great Spirit, to bring Him into your hearts. Only then can we become brothers and really mean it. Then a new world will become real before our eyes.

In our prophecies, which is very long, it tells that one day a great white serpent would come upon the land, and he would be choking the life's breath out of the Indian. We would almost be dead. And, suddenly he would release us, when he saw a great red serpent stirring, coming down from the North upon the land. As this red serpent closes in, the white serpent would become bewildered, and he would drop the Indian to the ground, almost like a helpless child. Then a black serpent would come upon the land, fast, to meet these other people that were here. A great fight would ensue, and a war against the prestige of this great white serpent would begin. The white serpent would be brought down. Many great battles would take place, **violences**. The white serpent would become split. His right hand would be fighting his left hand. The white man would be fighting the white man, and the black man would be fighting the white man. And, then in the confusion the red serpent would sweep over the land. Deganawida told us, "Watch out for these times. Get away from this fight. But, renew your faith back to the Great Spirit." He said that the battle would be so violent that the mountains **would** split, the rivers would boil, and the fish would turn up on their bellies. The air would be poisoned. There would be nothing to eat. Great things would happen. Confusion. Disaster. Famine. And, in the prophecies of our people it tells about white people, the white serpent, who will realize that his government is collapsing. He will send his young people

and his children out to meet with the Indians to **try** to get protection, spiritual guidance, to try to get help. We **were** not to refuse this help. But, before we could give any help or unity to anybody, we must first find peace and unity within our own hearts, within our own souls.

There is a great answer that is going to come from Hopi, because this is the place where even my people came from, where **all** Indian people came from. A long time ago it is told that Tha-ronda-na-waga, who was that Holder of the Heavens as it's interpreted in our way, guided my people across the mountains to the East, across the great river, the Mississippi, across the plains to the place where it appeared that the Great Spirit had placed his hand upon the ground. There my people were supposed to gather. We were given different instructions, every nation was given different instructions. Many went

North, South and to the West. And they that have kept these instructions are beginning to stand. My people went out there to a place in New York where the Finger Lakes are. If you were in a plane, and you looked down there, it would look like the hand of the Great Spirit was on the ground. That's where the Ho-de-no-sau-ne, the People of the Longhouse, got their message. This is the message I'm bringing to not only the Indian people but to the people of the world. So, it is important that we look back to the prophecies, back to the instructions, that we remove any hate and ill feelings that we might have for our brothers and sisters, remove it and be at peace again, so that our minds could be clear and we could see the great path. So, as we meet this day, I want us to join hands and be friends, to have peace and to remember the instructions that were brought down to us by the Great Spirit.

## The Seven Fires Prophecy of the Algonquin

Following is a short telling of the Seven Fires Prophecy of Anishnabe (the Algonquin Peoples). The prophecy is encoded on a “Wampum Belt” – a belt sewn with thousands of tiny, polished, cylindrical purple and white shell beads. The contemporary keeper of this belt is Chief William Commanda of Kitigen Zibi Anishnabeg Reserve in Maniwaki, Quebec. According to, Grandfather Commanda, the full Seven Fires Prophecy takes several days to tell, and has many elements. As you read this, keep in mind we are now in the time of the Seventh Fire.

Non-traditional people often have a difficult time comprehending Native prophecies. At times, the prophecies seem to blur the distinction between a physical and spiritual event, or even between a spiritual concept and an actual person. I gradually have begun to appreciate the connectedness of all things inherent in Native teachings. Could everything be a microcosm or macrocosm of all other things?

---

### THE STORY OF THE SEVEN FIRES PROPHECY

Seven prophets came to Anishnabe. They came at a time when the people were living a full and peaceful life on the North Eastern coast of North America. These prophets left the people with seven predictions of what the future would bring. Each of the prophecies was called a fire and each fire referred to a particular era of time that would come in the future. Thus, the teachings of the seven prophets are now called the “Seven Fires”.

The first prophet said to the people, “In the time of the First Fire, the Anishnabe nation will rise up and follow the sacred **shell** of the Midewiwin Lodge. The Midewiwin Lodge will serve as a rallying point for the people and its traditional ways will be the source of much strength. The Sacred **Megis** will lead the **way to** the chosen ground of the Anishnabe. You are to look for a turtle shaped island that is linked to the purification of the earth. You will find such an island at the beginning and at the end of your journey. There will be seven stopping places along the way. You will know the chosen ground has been reached when you come to a land where food grows on **water**. If you do not **move you** will be destroyed.”

The second prophet told the people, “You will know the Second Fire because at this time the nation will be camped by a large body of water. In this time the direction of the Sacred Shell will be lost. The Midewiwin will diminish in strength, a boy will be born to point the way back to the traditional ways. He will show the direction to the stepping stones to the future of the Anishnabe people.

The third prophet said to the people. “In the Third Fire, the Anishnabe will find the path to their chosen ground, a land in the west to which they must move their families. This will be the land where food grows on water.

The Fourth Fire was originally given to the people by two prophets. They come as one. They told of the coming of the Light Skinned race. One of the prophets said, “You will know the future of our people by the face the Light Skinned race wears. If they come wearing the face of brotherhood then there will come a time of wonderful change for generations to come. They will bring new knowledge and articles that can be joined with the knowledge of this country, in this way, two nations will join to make a mighty nation. This new nation will be joined by two more so that four will form the mightiest nation of all. You will know the face of the brotherhood if the light skinned race comes carrying no weapons. If they come bearing only their knowledge and a hand shake.”

The other prophet said, “Beware if the Light Skinned race comes wearing the face of death. You must be careful because the face of brotherhood and the face of death look very much alike. If they come carrying a weapon...beware. If they come in suffering... They could fool you. Their hearts may be filled with greed for the riches of this land. If they are indeed your brothers, let them prove it. Do not accept them in total trust. You shall know that the face they wear is one of death if the rivers run with poison and the fish become unfit to eat. You shall know them by these many things.”

The Fifth Prophet said, “In the time of the Fifth Fire there will come a time of great struggle that will grip the lives of all Native people. At the warning of this Fire there will **come** among the people one who holds a promise of great joy and salvation. If the people accept this promise of a new way and abandon the old teachings, then the struggle of the Fifth Fire will be with the people for many generations. The promise that comes will prove to be a false promise. All those who accept this promise will cause the near destruction of the people.”

The prophet of the Sixth Fire said, "In the time of the Sixth' **Fire** it will be evident that the promise of the Fifth Fire came in a false way. Those deceived by this promise will take their children away from the teachings of the Elders, grandsons and granddaughters will turn against the Elders. In this way, the Elders will lose their reason for living... they will lose their purpose in life. At this time a new sickness will come among the people. The balance of many people will be disturbed. The cup of life will almost be spilled. The cup of life will almost become the cup of grief."

At the time of these predictions, many people scoffed at the prophets. They then had medicines to keep away sickness. They were then healthy and happy as a people. These were the people who chose to stay behind in the great migration of the Anishnabe. These people were the first to have contact with the Light Skinned race. They would suffer the most.

When the Fifth Fire came, to pass, a great struggle did indeed grip the lives of all Native people. The Light Skinned race launched a military attack on the Indian people through-out the country aimed at taking away their land and their independence as a free and sovereign people. It is now felt that the false promise that came at the end of the Fifth Fire was the materials and riches embodied in the way of life of the light skinned race. Those who abandoned the ancient ways and accepted this new promise were a big factor in causing the near destruction of the Native people of this land.

When the **Sixth** Fire came to be, the words of the prophet rang true as the children were taken away from the teachings of the Elders. The boarding school era of "civilizing" Indian Children had begun. The Indian language and religion were taken from the children. The people started dying at an early age... they had lost their **will** to live and their purpose in living.

In the confusing times of the Sixth Fire, it is said that a group of visionaries came among the Anishnabe. They gathered all the priests of the Midewiwin Lodge. They told the priests that the Midewiwin Way was in danger of being destroyed. They gathered all the sacred bundles. They gathered all the scrolls that recorded the ceremonies. All these things were placed in a hollowed out log from the **ironwood** tree. Men were lowered over a cliff by long ropes. They dug a hole in the cliff and buried the log where no one could find it. Thus the teachings of the Elders were hidden out of sight but not out of memory. It was said that when the time **came** that the Indian people could practice their religion without fear that a little boy would dream where the **Ironwood** log, full of the Sacred Bundles and Scrolls were buried. He would lead his people to the place.

The Seventh Prophet that came to the people long ago was said to be different from the other prophets. He was

young and had a strange light in his eyes. He said, " In the time of the Seventh Fire, New People will emerge. They will retrace their steps to find what was left by the trail. Their steps will take them to the Elders who they will ask to guide them on their journey: But-many of the Elders will have fallen asleep. They **will awaken** to this new time with nothing **to offer**. **Some of the Elders** will be silent out of fear. Some of the Elders will be silent because no one will ask anything of them. The New People will have to be careful in how they approach the Elders. The task of the New People will not be easy.

If the New People will remain strong in their Quest, the Water Drum of the Midewiwin Lodge will again sound its voice. There will be a Rebirth of the Anishnabe Nation and a rekindling of old flames. The Sacred Fire will again be lit.

It is at this time that the Light Skinned race will be given a choice between two roads. If they choose the right road, then the Seventh Fire will light the Eighth and final Fire, an eternal Fire of peace, love, brotherhood and sisterhood. If the light skinned race makes the wrong choice of roads, then the destruction which they brought with them in coming to this country will come back at them and cause much suffering and death to all the Earth's people.

Traditional Mide people from other Nations have interpreted the two roads that face the Light Skinned race as the road to technology and the other to spiritualism. They feel that the road to technology represents a continuation of Head-Long rush to technological development. This is the **road** that has led to modern society, to a damaged and seared Earth. Could it be that the road to technology represents a rush to destruction? The road to Spirituality represents the slower path that Traditional Native People have traveled and are now seeking again. The Earth is not scorched on this trail. The grass is still growing there.

The prophet of the Fourth Fire spoke of a time when "two Nations will join to make a Mighty Nation". He was speaking of the coming of the Light Skinned race and the face of brotherhood that the Light Skinned Brother could be wearing. It is obvious from the history of this country that this was not the face worn by the Light Skinned race as a whole. That the Mighty Nation spoken of in the Fourth Fire has never been formed.

If the Natural People of the Earth could, just wear the face of brotherhood, we **might be** able to deliver our society from the road to destruction. Could we make the two roads that today represents two clashing world views come together to form a mighty Nation? Could a Nation be formed that is guided by respect for all living things? Are we the New People of the Seventh Fire?



## GRANDFATHER COMMANDA'S COMMENTS ON THE PROPHECY:

The story of the prophets and their teachings was later symbolically encoded in the design of the Wampum Belt, made of rawhide and Wampum sea shell beads woven together with leather strips. This Wampum Belt has been handed down among the Algonquin for hundreds of years, generation to generation.

Grandfather William Commanda, of the Maniwaki Reserve in Quebec, Canada, is the contemporary keeper of this wampum belt.

"The Seven Fires," he has explained, "represent times in the life of the people." It is a long story, but in particular the seventh prophet who spoke to the people long ago offered a message of importance to today. "In the time of the Seventh Fire," he said, "new people will emerge. They will retrace their steps to find what was left by the trail long ago. Their steps will take them to the Elders, who they will ask to guide them on their journey...If the new people remain strong in their quest, the Sacred Fire will again be lit. It is at this time that the people will be given a choice between two roads."

Traditional Elders of Indian nations have interpreted the two roads that lie before all people as the road to materialism, and the road to spirituality.

"We feel that a headlong rush to technological development without consideration of the Earth or future generations is the road that has led modern society to a damaged and seared Earth," Grandfather Commanda has said. "This road leads to destruction...However, if people choose the right road, the road of respect and spirituality, then the Seventh Fire will light an Eighth and final fire, an eternal fire of peace, spirituality, love, brotherhood, and sisterhood."

Grandfather Commanda, and other Traditional Spiritual Elders believe that we have entered the time of the Seventh Fire now, and that we have an opportunity to take action to kindle the potential Eighth Fire.

As he has explained it, "The other road, the road of spirituality, represents a slower path that Traditional Native People have traveled and are now seeking again. The Earth is not scorched on this trail. The grass is still growing there...Could a nation be formed that is guided by respect for all living things?"

a

## "Prophecies of the Q'ero Incan Shamans

Following is an article by Brad Berg from the January/February 1997 issue of the internet version of "SHARE INTERNATIONAL MAGAZINE" It can be found at:  
<http://www.shareintl.org/qero.html>

---

SHARE INTERNATIONAL MAGAZINE  
January/February 1997

### PROPHECIES OF THE Q'ERO INCAN SHAMANS by Brad Berg

The light of idealism gleamed in his eyes as Dr. Alberto Villoldo described how an earthquake in 1949 underneath a monastery near Cuzco, Peru, had rent the ground asunder, exposing an ancient Incan temple of gold. This fulfilled a sign that the prophecies of Mosoq, the "time to come", were now to be shared with the modern world. Dr. Villoldo, a psychologist and medicinal anthropologist, has lived among and trained with the Q'ero shamans and has played a key role in bringing their ritual and prophecy to the awareness of the modern world.

The Q'ero are the last of the Incas -- a tribe of 600 who sought refuge at altitudes above 14,000 feet in order to escape the conquering conquistadors. For 500 years the Q'ero elders have preserved a sacred prophecy of a great change, or qachacuti, in which the world would be turned right-side-up, harmony and order would be restored, and chaos and disorder ended.

The Q'ero had lived in their villages high in the Andes in virtual solitude from the world until their "discovery" in 1949. In that year, Oscar Nunez del Prado, an anthropologist, was at a festival in Paucartambo, in a valley on the eastern slopes of the Andes in southern Peru, when he met two Indians speaking fluent Quecha, the language of the Incas. The first Western expedition to the Q'ero villages then occurred in 1955.

Four years later, at the annual Feast of The Return of the Pleiades taking place in the Andes, the gathering of 70,000 pilgrims from South America (many of them shamans) were awed and the crowd parted to let the Q'ero, unannounced and wearing the Incan emblem of the sun, make their way forward to the mountain top to make known that the time of the prophecies was at hand. They were welcomed by the assembly and told: "We've been waiting for you for 500 years."

Recently, Q'ero elders journeyed to North America in fulfillment of their prophecies. In November 1996, a small group of Q'ero, including the tribal leader and the head shaman, visited several cities in the US, including New York, where they performed a private ceremony at the Cathedral of St. John the Divine. The shamanic ritual had not been performed for 500 years. But in the

very home of those who symbolized the former conquerors of their Incan ancestors they shared their ritual and knowledge, not only with interested Westerners who were learning their ways, but also with the Dean of the great cathedral, thereby symbolically and spiritually linking the two continents of North and South America.

According to ancient prophecy, this is the time of the great gathering called the mastay, and reintegration of the peoples of the four directions. The Q'ero are releasing their teachings to the West, in preparation for the day the Eagle of the North and the Condor of the South (the Americas) fly together again. They believe that munay, love and compassion, will be the guiding force of this great gathering of the peoples.

"The new caretakers of the Earth will come from the West, and those that have made the greatest impact on Mother Earth now have the moral responsibility to remake their relationship with Her, after remaking themselves," said Don Antonio Morales, a master Q'ero shaman. The prophecy holds that North America will supply the physical strength, or body; Europe will supply the mental aspect, or head; and the heart will be supplied by South America.

#### Signs fulfilled

When the Spanish conquered the Incas 500 years ago, the last pachacuti, or great change, occurred. The Q'ero have been waiting ever since for the next pachacuti, when things that were turned upside down would be set right and order would emerge out of chaos. For the past five centuries they preserved their sacred knowledge, and finally, in recent years, the signs were fulfilled that the great time of change was at hand: the high mountain lagoons have dried, the condor is nearly extinct and the discovery of the Golden Temple has occurred, following the earthquake in 1949 which represented the wrath of the sun.

The prophecies are optimistic. They refer to the end of time as we know it -- the death of a way of thinking and a way of being, the end of a way of relating to nature and to the earth. In the coming years, the Incas expect us to emerge into a golden age, a golden millennium of peace. The prophecies also speak of tumultuous changes happening in the earth, and in our psyche, redefining our relationships and spirituality.

The next pachacuti, or great change, has already begun and it promises the emergence of a new human after this period of turmoil. The chaos and upheaval characteristic of this period will last another four years, according to the **Q'ero**. The paradigm of European civilization will continue to collapse and the way of the Earth people will return. Even more importantly, the shamanic elders speak about a tear in the fabric of time itself. This presents an opportunity for us to describe ourselves not as who we have been in the past, both personally and collectively, but as who we are becoming.

Pachacuti also refers to a great **Incan** leader who lived in the late 1300s. He is said to have built **Machu Picchu**, and was the architect of an empire the size of the United States. For the Incas, Pachacuti is a spiritual prototype -- a Master, a luminous one who stepped outside of time. He was a messiah, but not in the Christian sense of the only son of God, beyond the reach of humanity. Rather he is viewed as a symbol and promise of who we all might become. He embodies the essence of the prophecies of the pachacuti, as **Pacha** means 'earth, or 'time', and **cuti** means "to set things right." His name also means "transformer of the earth."

The prophecies of the pachacuti are known throughout the Andes. There are those who believe the prophecies refer to the return of the leader Pachacuti to defeat those who took the Incas' land. But according to Dr. Villoldo, the return of Pachacuti is taking place on the collective level. "It's not the return of a single individual who embodies what we're becoming, but a process of emergence available to all peoples."

### The Star Rites

The Q'ero have served as the caretakers of the rites and prophecies of their Inca ancestors. The prophecies are of no use unless one has the keys, the rites of passage. The Star Rites, or, **Mosoq Karpay**- (The Rites of the Time To Come), are crucial to the practical growth described in the prophecies. Following the **despachos** (ritualistic offerings of mesa, or medicine bundles) at the recent ceremony in New York City, and after a medicine cleansing by the wives of the shamans, the shamans administered the Mosoq Karpay to the individuals present, transmitting the energies originating with the ancestors of their lineage.

The transmission of the Mosoq Karpay is the ceremony representing the end of one's relationship to time. It is a process of the heart. This process of Becoming is considered more important than the prophecies

themselves. The Karpay (rites) plant the seed of **knowledge**, the seed of **Pachacuti**, in the luminous body of the recipient. It is up to each person to water and tend the seed so that it can grow and blossom. The rites are a transmission of potential; one must then make oneself available to destiny.

The Karpays connect the person to an ancient lineage of knowledge and power that cannot be accessed by the individual -- it can only be summoned by a tribe. Ultimately, this power can provide the impetus for one to leap into the body of an Inca, a Luminous One. (In this sense, the Inca referred to is the Self-realized man). That person is connected directly to the stars, the **Incan** Sun of cosmology.

### Regaining our luminous nature

According to Dr. Villoldo, the Incas believe that we must die to the old models of spirituality and go through the rites of self-renewal, becoming midwives of a new kind of thinking.

"These pathways, paths of the shaman, the individual who walks with beauty and grace in the world, are available to all of us today. We need to de-mystify them and learn to honor and respect our Mother, the earth, and our Father, the sun, and the heavens -- and to learn from everything and everyone around us, and to seize those instances of power so that we may take a quantum leap into who we are becoming, all of us together.

"The Q'ero believe that the doorways between the worlds are opening again -- holes in time that we can step through and beyond, where we can explore our human capabilities. Regaining our luminous nature is a possibility today for all who dare to take the leap."

The **Andean** shamans have no Christ or Buddha to follow. Rather, they say: "Follow your own footsteps. Learn from the rivers, the trees and the rocks. Honor the Christ, the Buddha, your brothers and sisters. Honor the Earth Mother and the Great Spirit. Honor yourself and all of creation."

"Look with the eyes of your soul and engage the essential" is the teaching of the Q'ero.

For additional information, contact Four Winds Society in the US at **610-294-1036**. For additional source material see -Wildfire- magazine, Volume 7, Number 4, Fall 199% issue

## Message of Our Lady of Fatima

In January of 1997, two friends from the *Sunbow 5 Walk for the Earth* and I visited a traditional couple at their home in Hotevilla, Third Mesa, Hopi. At one point, the husband said: "Here. This is the same as our prophecy." He handed us the following version of the Message of Our Lady of Fatima. Since then, I have run across warnings of "Three Days of Darkness" from many other Native and non-Native sources. My heart tells me this information will be *crucial*:

---

### THIRD MESSAGE OF OUR LADY OF FATIMA

The Church has finally given permission to awaken people **with the messages of Fatima, as they were given** by Virgin Mary when she appeared to three children on October **13, 1917**. The apparition of the Blessed Virgin Mary in Fatima has been approved by the Church. One of the children, sister Lucia, a nun, is still living in Portugal.

Sister Lucia gave the prophecy of our Lady of Fatima to Pope Pious XII. When the Pope read the prophecy, he did not want to reveal it to the world and was anguished by it. The Pope took note of the message and put it out of his reach, so that it was not read again while he was still alive. After the death of Pope Pious **XII** the Vatican was unwilling to reveal the message because they were fearful of the shock that this could **cause** humanity and of the consequences this revelation would bring. After the death of Pope John **XXIII** the Vatican reminded the new Pope, Paul VI, of the message. Between **1963** and 1964 Pope Paul VI read the message and was astonished by its contents; so, he decided he would reveal to the world only a small portion of it. He did this **because** the time was short and because our Lady of Fatima gave Lucia-even another message:

"Go, my daughter, and tell the world those things that will be forthcoming between **1960** and 2000. Man is not keeping the **commandments** God has given him. The devil is conquering the world, and he is making people hate one another. Powerful weapons are being manufactured which can destroy the world in a few minutes. Half of humanity will be destroyed. Hard times are upon the church. Perversity will thrive among men, and the devil will plant seeds so that nobody will get along, and people will lose their faith. The war will come back to Rome and there will be fighting among the religious orders. The weak and the wicked will all fall down. God will send us cold weather, smoke, water, hail, fire, rain and unbearable climatic conditions. Winters will be extremely cold and earthquakes will destroy human life little by little, and will also destroy all those materialistic lives. Millions will lose their lives in a few seconds. **THOSE WHO DO NOT BELIEVE WILL DIE**. Those who survive will wish to be dead. We cannot imagine a planet such as this, but definitely God will punish those who do not accept Him. Those who believe in Him and are faithful to His Word will survive and will live only because of their trust in Him. I am calling

everyone so that you come back to my Son. Lord, help the weak ones and all those who will not surrender to You, for whatever suffering they may have because of their actions."

Father Agustino of Rome, who is in Fatima, Portugal, says that Pope Paul VI gave him permission to see sister Lucia. His own words after talking to her were the following: "She saw me with much **sadness**" and said; "Father, our Lady is not happy because **nobody** was interested in her prophecy given to us in 1917. Faithful people are following their own paths and are not interested in this message from heaven. The unfaithful walk upon wide paths that lead to destruction. Believe me, Father, punishment is at hand and many souls will be **destroyed**. Entire nations will disappear from the face of the earth. On the other hand, if people get back to praying and to doing the Lord's work the world will be saved and many will not die. The time has come for all the world to start praying and doing penance. Let people pass on this message to their families, friends, and to the whole world. The last days before this catastrophe are near. Because of this catastrophe people will return to the Catholic Church. England, Russia, China, Protestants and **Jews** will all praise and believe in God, in our Lord Jesus Christ, and the Blessed Virgin Mary. Many will say that they are waiting 'for the message of repentance and prayer to come from the Pope and from the Bishops themselves. I am telling you today just as the Mother of God said to us, start praying and do penance now! Pray for the conversions of the world since the time left is very short."

### WHAT LIES AHEAD OF US?

People will be speaking everywhere of reconstructing peace and truth, but our punishment will come as well. One man of a prominent position will be assassinated. This will bring war and revolution; and this will be a very cold war. A very strong army will go to Europe and will start an atomic war. It will destroy everything. Darkness will descend upon earth for 72 hours (3 days), and only one third of humanity will survive the 72 hours of darkness, and will live a new life. These people will be the new children of God.

A huge earthquake will shake the planet for 8 hours on a very cold night, 10 minutes before midnight. This will be the third sign that God is the Ring of the earth. The

faithful and those who make the FATIMA prophecy known at this time need not be afraid.

### WHAT TO DO

Kneel down and pray to the Lord for His MERCY! Do not go outside or let anyone enter your home. Only the faithful will not be in the hand of the devil and will survive the catastrophe. I give you these signs so that you may be prepared and survive. The signs are the following: (1) It will be a very cold night; (2) The wind will blow as **never** before for a very short time; and (3) The earth will begin to tremble.

Close all the windows in your houses, and do not speak to anyone except to those in your home. Do not look outside. Do not be curious and look outside, because this is the rage of God. Light a CANDLE THAT HAS BEEN BLESSED because other light sources will not work during "the three days of darkness".

Kneel down before the Cross, pray the Holy Rosary and after each Hail Mary say the following prayer:

Oh! My God, forgive our sins,  
save us from the flames of hell,  
take all souls to heaven,  
especially those who need most of Thy mercy.

Mary, protect us,  
Jesus and Mary we love Thee,  
save us and save the world.

The Rosary is the secret of the Immaculate Heart of Mary. The Blessed Virgin Mary repeated the following three times: "I hope that all believers go to mass during the first Fridays and Saturdays of each month. Go to confession because that will help save the world from destruction." I remind you again, that all those who pray the Rosary everyday will be protected by heaven and by the Blessed Virgin Mary. During the time of punishment and at the hour of their death, under the protection of her Maternal Heart they will die peacefully and enter the other world with God.

The wind will bring gas that will cover the entire planet. Water and everything that enters in contact with this poisonous gas will be contaminated. **DO NOT USE ANY OF THIS SO THAT YOU ARE NOT POISONED.** On the third night the earth will stop trembling you may go outside. The sun will shine.

Those who listen to this and do not believe will die. Angels will come from heaven and will bless the earth at the right time. Let's all survive this catastrophe. All of us must start praying and doing penance **NOW!** Humanity must pray for a place in heaven which the fallen angels (demons) left behind. God will not allow these things to happen if we obey His call to prayer and total conversion. **"LET HUMANITY KNOW THIS AND BELIEVE IN HIM"**

Please pray three Hail Marys **NOW!** Amen.

---

---

**Note that the Hopi version of this prophecy says that 'The Earth will shake and turn red and turn against those who are hindering the Hopi. To all these people Purification Day will come. Humble people will run to him in search of a new world, and the equality that has been denied them. He will come unmercifully. His people will cover the Earth like red ants. We must not go outside to watch. We must stay in our houses. He will come and gather the wicked people who are hindering the red people who were here first. He will be looking for someone whom he will recognize by his way of life, or by his head (the special Hopi haircut) or by the shape of his village and his dwellings. He is the only one who will purify us.' - from a talk by Grandfather Dan Katchongva on January 29, 1970. (See page 19)**

## Mother Shipton's Prophecy

Here is a prophecy of "Mother Shipton" which was published by Nexus Magazine. There is some question as to the authenticity of this prophecy, so you will have to check with your inner knowing. For me, it includes spine-tingling parallels with Hopi and other prophecies.

The best review of Mother Shipton's prophecies I have seen was done by Tom Kay in his recent book "When the Comet Runs". I met Tom while he was signing books at the "Gateway to the Future" conference at the Association for Research and Enlightenment in February, 1997. Anyone who begins to write a book about a comet a full year before the comet is "discovered" certainly has my attention! I highly recommend Tom's book. He covers many excellent prophetic sources of which I was not aware, and does an excellent job relating them to each other.

---

### MOTHER SHIPTON'S COMPLETE PROPHECY

Published in Nexus Magazine, Volume 2, Number 24 (February-March 1995)

PO Box 30, Mapleton Qld 4560 Australia. email: [nexus@peg.apc.org](mailto:nexus@peg.apc.org)

<http://www.peg.apc.org/-nexus/>

Telephone: +61 (0)74 429 280; Fax: +61 (0)74 429 381

This rare collection of Mother Shipton's prophecies was sent to us by a NEXUS reader who told us that, thirty years ago, she painstakingly transcribed them and managed to smuggle them out of the Mitchell Library, Sydney (now the State Library of New South Wales). The originals were kept in a locked room, along with many other volumes of prophetic writings deemed unsuitable for viewing by the general public. To our knowledge, this particular translation has never been made **available** to the public before appearing in NEXUS Magazine. While NEXUS published these **transcriptions** in an earlier issue (Vol. 2, #3), we thought them worthy of repeating for the benefit of our newer readers, particularly in light of recent world events. Mother **Shipton** reputedly was born Ursula Sontheil in 1488 in Norfolk, England, and died in **1561**. She exhibited prophetic and psychic abilities from an early age. At 24, married to **Toby Shipton**, she eventually became known as Mother **Shipton**. Many of her visions came true within her own lifetime and in subsequent centuries. These rare verses from Mother **Shipton** seem to have prophetic indications for our times, but of course are open to interpretation.

-----

And now **a** word, in uncouth rhyme  
Of what whall be in future time

Then upside down the world shall be  
And gold found at the root of tree  
**All** England's sons that plough the land  
Shall oft be seen with Book in hand  
The poor shall now great wisdom know  
Great houses stand in far-flung vale  
All covered o'er with snow and hail

A carriage without horse will go  
Disaster fill the world with woe.  
In London, Primrose Hill shall be  
In centre hold a Bishop's See

Around the world men's thoughts will fly  
Quick as the twinkling of an eye.  
And water shall great wonders do  
How strange. And yet it shall come true.

Through towering hills proud men shall ride  
No horse or ass move by his side.  
Beneath the water, men shall walk

Shall ride, shall sleep, shall even talk.  
And in the air men shall be seen  
In white and black and even green

A great man then, shall come and go  
For prophecy declares it so.

In water, iron, then shall float  
As easy as a wooden boat  
Gold shall be seen in stream and stone  
In land that is yet unknown.

And England shall admit a Jew  
You think this strange, but it is true  
The Jew that once was held in scorn  
Shall of a Christian then be born.

A house of glass shall come to **pass**  
In England. But Alas, alas  
A war will follow with the work  
Where dwells the Pagan and the Turk

These states will lock in fiercest strife  
And seek to take each others life. .

When North shall thus divide the south  
And Eagle build in Lions mouth  
Then tax and blood and cruel war  
Shall come to every humble door.

Three times shall lovely sunny France  
Be led to play a bloody dance  
Before the people shall be free  
Three tyrant rulers shall she see.

Three rulers in succession be  
Each springs from different dynasty.  
Then when the fiercest strife is done  
England and France shall be as one.

The British olive shall next then twine  
In marriage with a German vine.  
Men walk beneath and over streams  
Fulfilled shall be their wondrous dreams.

For in those wondrous far off days  
The women shall adopt a craze  
To dress like men, and trousers wear  
And to cut off their locks of hair  
They'll ride astride with brazen brow  
As witches do on broomstick now.

And roaring monsters with man atop  
Does seem to eat the verdant crop  
And men shall fly as birds do now  
And give away the horse and plough.

There'll be a sign for all to see  
Be sure that it will certain be.  
Then love shall die and marriage cease  
And nations wane as babes decrease

And wives shall fondle cats and dogs  
And men live much the same as hogs.

In nineteen hundred and twenty six  
Build houses light of straw and sticks.  
For then shall mighty wars be planned  
And fire and sword shall sweep the land.

When pictures seem alive with movements free  
When boats like fishes swim beneath the sea,  
When men like birds shall scour the sky  
Then half the world, deep drenched in blood shall die.

For those who live the century through  
In fear and trembling this shall do.  
Flee to the mountains and the dens  
To bog and forest and wild fens.

For storms will rage and oceans roar  
When Gabriel stands on sea and shore  
And as he blows his wondrous horn  
Old worlds die and new be born.

A fiery dragon will cross the sky  
Six times before this earth shall die  
Mankind will tremble and frightened be  
for the sixth heralds in this prophecy.

For seven days and seven nights  
Man will watch this awesome sight.  
The tides will rise beyond their ken  
To bite away the shores and then  
The mountains will begin to roar  
And earthquakes split the plain to shore.

And flooding waters, rushing in  
Will flood the lands with such a din  
That mankind cowers in muddy fen  
And snarls about his fellow men.

He bares his teeth and fights and kills  
And secrets food in secret hills  
And ugly in his fear, he lies  
To kill marauders, thieves and spies.

Man flees in terror from the floods  
And kills, and rapes and lies in blood  
And spilling blood by mankind's hands  
Will stain and bitter many lands

And when the dragon's tail is gone,  
Man forgets, and smiles, and carries on  
To apply himself - too late, too late  
For mankind has earned deserved fate.

His masked smile - his false grandeur,  
Will serve the Gods their anger stir.  
And they will send the Dragon back  
To light the sky - his tail will crack  
Upon the earth and rend the earth  
And man shall flee, King, Lord, and serf.

But slowly they are routed out  
To seek diminishing water spout  
And men will die of thirst before  
The oceans rise to mount the shore.

And lands will crack and rend anew  
You think it strange. It will come true.

And in some far off distantland  
Some men - oh such a tiny band  
Will have to leave their solid mount  
And span the earth, those few to count,  
Who survives this (unreadable) and then  
Begin the human race again.

But not on land already there  
But on ocean beds, stark, dry and bare  
Not every soul on Earth will die  
As the Dragons tail goes sweeping by.

Not every land on earth will sink  
But these will wallow in stench and stink  
Of rotting bodies of beast and man  
Of vegetation crisped on land.

But the land that rises from the sea  
Will be dry and clean and soft and free  
Of mankind's dirt and therefore be  
The source of man's new dynasty.

And those that live will ever fear  
The dragons tail for many year  
But time erases memory  
You think it strange, But it will be.

And before the race is built anew  
A silver serpent comes to view  
And spew out men of like unknown  
To mingle with the earth now grown  
Cold from its heat and these men can  
Enlighten the minds of future man.

To intermingle and show them how  
To live and love and thus endow  
The children with the second sight.  
A natural thing so that they might  
Grow graceful, humble and when they do  
The Golden Age will start anew.

The dragons tail is but a sign  
For mankind's fall and man's decline.  
And before this prophecy is done  
I shall be burned at the stake, at one  
My body singed and my soul set free  
You think I utter blasphemy  
You're wrong. These things have come to me  
This prophecy will come to be.

---

These verses were on the outer wrapping of the scrolls:

I know I go - I know I'm free  
I know that this will come to be. .  
Secreted this - for this will be  
Found by later dynasty

A dairy maid, a bonny lass  
Shall kick this tone as she does pass  
And five generations she shall breed  
Before one male child does learn to read.

This is then held year by year

Till an iron monster trembling fear  
eats parchment, words and quill and ink  
And mankind is given time to think.

And only when this comes to be  
Will mankind read this prophecy  
But one mans sweets another's bane  
So I shall not have burned in vain.

---

This section was kept apart from the other and it appears  
to have been written together yet was in a separate jar:

The signs will be there for all to read  
When man shall do most heinous deed  
Man will ruin kinder lives  
By taking them as to their wives.

And murder foul and brutal deed  
When man will only think of greed.  
And man shall walk as if asleep  
He does not look - he may not peep  
And iron men the tail shall do  
And iron cart and carriage too.

The kings shall false promise make  
And talk just for talking's sake  
And nations plan horrific war  
The like as never seen before  
And taxes rise and lively down  
And nations wear perpetual frown.

Yet greater sign there be to see  
As man nears latter century  
Three sleeping mountains gather breath  
And spew out mud, and ice and death.  
And earthquakes swallow town and town,  
In lands as yet to me unknown.

And Christian one fights Christian two  
And nations sigh, yet nothing do  
And yellow men great power gain  
From mighty bear with whom they've lain.

These mighty tyrants will fail to do  
They fail to split the world in two.  
But from their acts a danger bred  
An ague - leaving many dead.  
And physics find no remedy  
For this is worse than leprosy.

Oh many signs for all to see  
The truth of this true prophesy.



## The Visions of Dannion Brinkley

In September of 1975, then 25 year old Dannion Brinkley was struck by lightning while talking on the phone. Efforts by doctors in the hospital to revive his electrocuted body failed, and he died. As his wife and best friend grieved over his body, Dannion had what has come to be known as a “near-death experience”. He found himself traveling through a tunnel toward a bright light, where he was met by a “Being of Light”. As happens to many NDE experiencers, Dannion then had a “life review” in which he experienced all of the significant events of his life, from the perspectives of the people with whom he had interacted. As he had killed many people in Vietnam, the life review was an excruciating experience. He felt every nuance of the horrible results of his actions on the people he killed and their families. Despite an overwhelming sense of shame for his actions, Dannion felt nothing but love from the Being of Light.

Dannion then was shown 12 “boxes” in which unfolded disturbing visions of events on earth. He realized he was seeing events that had not yet occurred. As the visions ended, Dannion said he “had the amazing realization that these Beings were desperately trying to help us, not because we were such good guys, but because without us advancing spiritually here on earth, they could not become successful in their world.” “You humans are truly the heroes,” a Being told him. “Those who go to earth are heroes and heroines, because you are doing something that no other spiritual beings have the courage to do. You have gone to earth to co-create with God.”

After receiving his visions and instructions from the Beings of Light, Dannion found himself staring at his body, covered by a sheet in a hallway, as two orderlies approached to take it to the morgue. He entered his body, putting himself in full possession of its pain, and managed to blow on the sheets to alert the orderlies. He had been dead for 28 minutes.

After much physical rehabilitation (serious health problems have remained with him to the present) Dannion wrote down 117 events he witnessed in the boxes. By 1993, 95 of them had occurred. As you might well imagine, Dannion returned from his experience a changed man. He has spent the last 20 years in all manner of service to his fellow human beings, working especially in Hospices with those close to death. In 1994, his first book “Saved by the Light” was published. His second book, “At Peace in the Light”, was published the following year. Both are available as Harper paperbacks and are truly excellent and well worth reading. It is interesting to note one of the final messages Dannion received: “Without words, he told me that everything I had just seen was in the future, but not necessarily cast in stone. The flow of human events can be changed, but first people have to know what they are,” said the Being.” As you read, it will be apparent that most of the early visions came to pass as foreseen. But it seems some of the later events might possibly have been changed. It offers hope that we *can* have an impact.

Following is a short encapsulation of the visions Dannion received. For a more complete version, read “Saved by the Light.”

---

### Dannion Brinkley's Visions of the Future

#### BOXES ONE THROUGH THREE: Visions of a demoralized country

Boxes one and two showed the mood of America in the aftermath of the war in Southeast Asia. Dannion saw MIAs in slave labor camps in the jungles of North Vietnam, saw America failing into enormous debt, saw a

“spiritual hollowness” as Americans lost faith in America and what it stood for, and lost love for God. He saw the results of a “spiritual depravity” manifesting as “people rioting and looting because they wanted more material goods than they had, kids shooting other kids with high-powered rifles, criminals stealing cars, young men firing on other young men from the windows of cars.”

Box three showed the Seal of the President of the United States, with the initials "RR". He could tell the man was an actor, and he saw cartoons of him as a cowboy. For years following this vision, Dannion assumed Robert Redford **would** become president (!)

#### BOXES FOUR AND FIVE:

Strife and hatred in the holy lands

Boxes four and five were scenes from the Middle East, showing how in this area strife would reach a boiling point. Dannion saw two agreements taking place. In the first, Israelis and Arabs were agreeing to something, but Dannion couldn't make it out. (This was likely the agreement between Israel and Egypt to return the Sinai Peninsula.)

In the second agreement, "men were shaking hands and there was much talk about a new country. Then I saw a collage of images: the River Jordan, a settlement from Israel that was spreading into Jordan, and a map on which the country of Jordan was changing color." As he watched this puzzling collage unfold, Dannion heard a Being speak telepathically and say that the country of Jordan would exist no more.

"This agreement was nothing more than a front by the Israelis to create a police force composed of Israelis and Arabs. This was a very harsh police force, cruel and unyielding. I saw them wearing blue-and-silver uniforms and having a tight grip on the people of this region. So tight was their grip, in fact, that world leaders became highly critical of Israel. Many collaborators on both sides kept an eye on their own people and reported their activities to this police force."

"I could see Israel becoming isolated from the rest of the world. As things worsened, there were images of Israel preparing for war against other countries, including Russia and a Chinese-and-Arab consortium. Jerusalem was somehow at the eye of this conflict." Dannion could see that some incident in that holy city had served to trigger this war.

The visions revealed Israel as being spiritually hollow, a nation of strong government but weak morals. Image after image came of Israelis reacting with hatred toward Palestinians and other Arabs.

The fifth box showed oil being used as a weapon to control the international economy. Dannion saw Mecca and the Saudi people. A telepathic voice told him oil production was being cut off to destroy America's economy. The price of oil was going up and **up**, and Saudi Arabia was making an alliance with Syria and China. "I could see Arab and Oriental people shaking hands and making deals. As these images came to me, I could sense money being given by the Saudis to Asian countries like North Korea, all in the hopes of destabilizing the

economy of the Asian region. I wondered where this alliance began and I was able to see a closeup of Syrians and Chinese signing papers and shaking hands in a building that I knew was in Syria. The date that came to me was 1992."

"Another date came to ~~me-1993-and~~ with it came images of Syrian and Chinese scientists working in laboratories to develop a missile that could deliver chemical and biological weapons."

#### BOX SIX:

Visions of nuclear destruction

"Number six was terrifying. I was drawn into the box and found myself in a cool, forested area beside a river. Next to the river was a massive cement structure, square and foreboding. I was fearful and didn't know why.

**Suddenly** the earth shook and the top of this cement structure exploded. I knew it was a nuclear explosion and could sense hundreds of people dying around me as it took place. The year 1986 was given to me through telepathy, as was the word "wormwood".

"It wasn't until a decade later, when the Chernobyl nuclear plant exploded near Kiev in the Soviet Union, that I was able to associate these pictures with an event. It was then that I made another connection between the vision in this box and the nuclear disaster in the USSR. The word Chernobyl means "wormwood" in Russian."

Dannion went on to see the collapse of the Soviet Union, brought on in part by the nuclear accident. He saw the formation of a "Mafia" that came out of Georgia and operated with impunity out of a city he took to be Moscow. Eventually the Mafia grew to be a power that was a competition to the government.

"I felt no joy as I watched the Soviet Union collapse. Although Soviet-style communism was dying right before my eyes, the Being of Light was saying that this was a cautious moment instead of a glorious one. 'Watch the Soviet Union,' he said. 'How the Russian people go, so goes the world. What happens to Russia is the basis for everything that will happen to the economy of the free world.'"

#### BOX SEVEN:

The environmental religion

"The seventh box held powerful images of environmental destruction. I could see areas of the world radiating energy, glowing like a radium watch face in the dark. Telepathically I could hear voices speaking of the need to clean up the environment. These voices came out of Russia at first, but then the accents changed and I could tell that they were emanating from South America, probably from Uruguay or Paraguay. I saw the speaker from Russia as he talked with zeal about our need to

heal the environment. People rallied around him quickly, and he soon became so powerful that he was elected one of the leaders of the United Nations. I saw this Russian riding on a white horse, and I knew that his rise would come before the year 2000."

#### BOXES EIGHT AND NINE:

China battles Russia

"In boxes eight and nine were visions of China's growing anger toward the Soviet Union. The main battle was over a railroad, which the Chinese took in heavy fighting. They then pushed deep into the Soviet Union, cutting the country in half and taking over the oil fields of Siberia."

#### BOX TEN:

Economic earthquakes, Desert Storm

"Boxes ten and eleven came in rapid succession. They revealed scenes of the economic collapse of the world. In general terms, these visions showed a world in horrible turmoil by the turn of the century, one that resulted in a new world order that was truly one of feudalism and strife. The voice that accompanied the visions told me that this would take place in the nineties and would be the beginning of an economic strife that would lead to the bankruptcy of America by the year 2000."

"But the end of America as a world power came as visions of two horrendous earthquakes in which buildings were swaying and toppling over like a child's wooden blocks. I knew that these quakes happened sometime before the end of the century, but I couldn't tell where they took place. I do remember seeing a large body of water that was probably a river."

"The cost of rebuilding these destroyed cities would be the final straw for our government, now so financially broken that it would hardly be able to keep itself alive. The voice in the vision told me that it would be this way while the images from the box showed Americans starving and lined up for food."

"At the tail end of box ten came images of warfare in the desert, a massive show of military might. I saw armies racing toward one another in the desert, with great clouds of dust billowing from the treads of tanks as they crossed the barren ground. There was cannon fire and explosions that looked like lightning. The earth shook and then there was silence. Like a bird, I flew over acres of destroyed army equipment. As I left the box, the date 1990 came into my head. That was the year of Desert Storm"

#### BOX ELEVEN:

Middle East turmoil, war in the Balkans, famine

"Box eleven began with Iran and Iraq in possession of nuclear and chemical weapons. Included in this arsenal was a submarine loaded with nuclear missiles. The year, said a voice in the vision, was 1993. I saw this submarine powering through the waters of the Middle East, piloted by people I knew to be Iranians. I could tell that their purpose was to stop the shipping of oil from the Middle East. They were so praiseful of God in their speech that I had the sense that this was some kind of religious mission."

"The missiles that occupied the desert of the Middle East were equipped with chemical warheads. I don't know where they were aimed, but I do know that there was worldwide fear of the intentions of the Arab nations that had them."

"Chemical warfare played a role in a horrible vision of terrorism that takes place in France before 2000. It begins when the French publish a book that infuriates the Arab world. I don't know the title of this book, but the result of its publication is a chemical attack by Arabs on a city in France. A chemical is put into the water supply, and thousands drink it and die before it can be eliminated."

Another vision shows Egypt would collapse as a democracy in 1997 and be taken over by religious fanatics.

"The final visions from box eleven were like many images we now see of Sarajevo: modern cities crumbling beneath the weight of warfare, their inhabitants fighting one another for reasons ranging from racism to religious conflict. I saw many towns worldwide where desperate citizens were eating their own dead. In one such scene, Europeans in a hilly region of the world were weeping as they cooked human meat. In rapid succession I saw people of all five races eating their fellow humans."

#### BOX TWELVE:

Technology and virus

"The twelfth box addressed an important event in the distant future, the decade of the nineties when many of the great changes would take place. (Remember these visions occurred in 1975.) In this box I watched as a biological engineer from the Middle East found a way to alter DNA and create a biological virus that would be used in the manufacture of computer chips. This discovery allowed for huge strides in science and technology. Japan, China, and other countries of the Pacific Rim experienced boom times as a result of this discovery and became powers of incredible magnitude. Computer chips produced from this process found their way into virtually every form of technology, from cars and airplanes to vacuum cleaners and blenders."

"Before the turn of the century, this man was among the richest in the world, so rich that he had a stranglehold

on the world economy. Still the world welcomed him, since the computer chips he had designed somehow put the world on an even keel. Gradually he succumbed to his own power. He began to think of himself as a deity and insisted on greater control of the world. With that extra control, he began to rule the world. His method of rule was unique. Everyone in the world was mandated by law to have one of his computer chips inserted underneath his or her skin. This chip contained all of an individual's personal information. People who refused to have chips implanted in their bodies roamed as outcasts. They could not be employed and were denied government services."

## THE FINAL VISIONS

"At the very end came a thirteenth vision. I don't know where it came from. I didn't see a Being of Light bring it forward in a box, nor did I see one take **it away**. This vision was in many ways the most important of all because it summed up everything I had seen in the twelve boxes. Through telepathy I could hear a Being say, 'If you follow what you have been taught and keep living the same way you have lived the last thirty years, all of this will surely be upon you. If you change, you can avoid the coming war.'"

"Scenes from a horrible world war accompanied this message. As the visions appeared on the screen, the Being told me that the years **1994** through **1996** were critical ones in determining whether this war would break out. 'If you follow this dogma, the world by the year 2004 will **not** be the same one you now know,' said the Being. 'But it can still be changed and you can help change it.'"

"Scenes from World War III came to life before me. I was in a hundred places at once, from deserts to forests, and saw a world filled with fighting and chaos. Somehow it was clear that this final war, an Armageddon if you will, was caused by fear. In one of the most puzzling visions of all, I saw an army of women in black robes and veils marching through a European city."

"The fear these people are feeling is an unnecessary one,' said the Being of Light. 'But it is a fear so great that humans will give up all freedoms in the name of safety.'"

"I also saw scenes that were not of war, including many visions of natural disasters. In parts of the world that had once been fertile with wheat and corn, I saw parched desert and furrowed fields that farmers had given up on. In **other parts** of the world, torrential rainstorms had gouged out the earth, eating away topsoil and creating rivers of thick, dark mud."

"People were starving in this vision. They were begging for food on the streets, holding out bowls and cups and even their hands in hopes that someone or something

would offer them a scrap to eat. In some of the pictures, people had given up or were too weak to beg and were curled on the ground waiting for the gift of death."

"I saw civil wars breaking out **in** Central **and** South America and the rise of socialist governments in all of these countries before the year 2000. As these wars intensified, millions of refugees streamed across the U.S. border, looking for a new life in North America. Nothing we did could stop these immigrants. They were driven by fear of death and loss of confidence in God. I saw millions of people streaming north out of El Salvador and Nicaragua, and more millions crossing the Rio **Grande** into Texas. There were so many of them that we had to line the border with troops and force them back across the river. The Mexican economy was broken by these refugees and collapsed under the strain."

"As these visions ended, I had the amazing realization that these Beings were desperately trying to help us, not because we were such good guys, but because without us advancing spiritually here on earth, they could not become successful in their world. 'You humans are truly the heroes,' a Being told me. Those who go to earth are heroes and heroines, because you are doing something that no other spiritual beings have the courage to do. You have gone to earth to co-create with God.' Without words, he told me that everything I had just seen was in the future, but not necessarily cast in stone. 'The flow of human events can be changed, but first people have to know what they are,' said the Being. He communicated to me again their belief that humans were great, powerful, and mighty spiritual Beings. 'We here see everyone who goes to the earth as great adventurers,' he said. 'You had the courage to go and expand your life and take your place in the great adventure that God created known as the world. Humans are mighty spiritual beings. All they need to realize is that love is treating others the way they themselves want to be treated.'"

## Edgar Cayce

Edgar Cayce, (pronounced **Casey**) **1877-1945**, was perhaps the best-documented psychic of all time. I was introduced to his work by a fellow **Sunbow** 5 walker, and was astounded by what I read: the information given by Mr. Cayce while in a hypnotic state agrees very remarkably with the information given by the Hopi themselves. My investigation of his life story revealed a very humble and Godly man; one of deep Christian faith whose beliefs were challenged and ultimately transformed by the extraordinary information that came through him.

Born March **18, 1877** near Hopkinsville, Kentucky, young Edgar (who early on received the nickname "Old Man") grew up on his family's farm. He spent much time with his Grandfather, the County's dowser. After his Grandfather's death in an accident, Edgar reported visits and talks with him in the barn. His mother didn't try to dispute these reports, but encouraged him not to speak of them too widely. At an early age, Edgar discovered a passion for reading the Bible. He decided to read the Bible once through for every year of his life, which he continued until his death in **1945**.

One evening, after spending the day reading the Bible in his favorite sunny spot in the woods, Edgar was visited by a luminous Spirit Being, who told him his prayers had been heard. The "Angelic Lady," as Edgar described the being, asked him what he wished for. Edgar replied "To be helpful to others, and especially to children when they are sick." The Angel told him his wish had been granted.

In 1901, when he was 24, Cayce lost his voice and could scarcely speak above a whisper. Doctors were unable to help him, and the condition persisted for an entire year. Finally, with the visit of a noted New York Hypnotist, Edgar agreed to a session of hypnosis. While in a hypnotic state, Cayce startled everyone by speaking in a normal voice and giving a diagnosis of his own problem. He suggested a treatment which worked and his normal voice was restored.

A short while later, a local doctor who was present at Cayce's hypnosis session made a request which changed Cayce's life forever. He asked Cayce to allow himself to be hypnotized again to see if the ability to diagnosis illness would work for a very ill young girl who was a patient of the **doctor's**. Reluctantly, Cayce agreed, and to his astonishment, the doctor told him on awakening that he had delivered an accurate diagnosis using correct medical terminology, and had suggested an unconventional treatment. Cayce, who remembered nothing of what he had said, insisted he knew nothing of medicine or treatments, and was horrified by the prospect that what he had suggested might harm the little girl. But the doctor assured him that nothing he had suggested would hurt, and he went on to apply the treatments recommended by Cayce. To the delight of the girl's parents and of the doctor, the little girl made a full recovery from a serious and long illness which the doctor had previously been unable to cure.

Cayce was deeply troubled by this event. His fundamentalist Christian mind viewed psychic ability in a dim light, and he was afraid it might be the work of the Devil. His mother was a very positive influence during this time, reminding him of the visit by the Angel, and of his wish. She encouraged him to pray that only God's Will be done through him, and to have faith.

The doctor made repeated requests for Cayce's help with other difficult cases, and very reluctantly Cayce agreed to allow himself to be hypnotized again and again. Each time the results were the same: accurate diagnosis, unconventional suggested treatments, and very positive results when the treatments were followed.

Cayce received his first national publicity when Wesley H. Ketchum, a local doctor who had been working with him, delivered a paper on Cayce's strange ability to a medical convention. On October **9, 1910**, a New York Times article on Ketchum's presentation brought Cayce publicity and a flood of requests for healing.

His work with Ketchum ended, and Cayce, who was now living in Selma, Alabama, hired Gladys Davis, a local stenographer, to help with the requests for readings. Davis continued to work with Cayce for the rest of his life, and after his death she went on to index the readings under more than 10,000 subjects.

In 1923, the work of his readings took an unexpected turn when an Ohio man who was interested in metaphysical subjects asked for information on any previous life he may have had. Information on several previous lives was given, in the same matter-of-fact way that physical health information had been given. Thus began an entirely new line of work for Cayce, in which information was given on past lives, forgotten periods of human history, on the origin and destiny of souls, and humanity's relationship with God. **Much of** this new information-especially on reincarnation-was outside of Cayce's beliefs, and he **struggled** mightily before fully **accepting this** and the other extraordinary information which came forward.

There are many books and other excellent sources of information on Cayce's work, and much is available from the organization he founded, The Association for Research and Enlightenment (A.R.E.), in Virginia Beach, VA. Among resources to be found there are the original transcripts of Cayce's readings, one of the largest libraries of metaphysical literature in the world, and **Search for** God study groups, which can be found all around the world. You can reach the A.R.E. at 1-800-333-4499 or visit their **internet** site: <http://www.are-cayce.com>

In selecting the following excerpts, I am indebted to one "compiler" in particular, B. Ernest Frejer, for his excellent collation of excerpts from Cayce's readings grouped under 264 subjects in *The Edgar Cayce Companion*, 1995, A.R.E. Press.

In the following transcripts, words that were emphasized by Cayce are shown in bold. Also, sections I find particularly relevant to the subject of this document are shown in bold in their entirety. The initials "EC" indicate Edgar Cayce, "GC" is Gertrude Cayce, his wife, who was often the "conductor" of the reading, though his son Hugh Lynn ("HLC") often took that role toward the end of Cayce's life. "GD" is Gladys Davis, the stenographer who transcribed the more than 14,000 readings Cayce gave in his lifetime. According to the readings, all were souls who had associated with one another in many previous lifetimes and who entered this time for a definite purpose.

Each reading received a number. A number such as 349-4 indicates the fourth reading for entity 349. In some cases where the reading refers to the "present time," the date of the reading follows the reading number. There were readings given on specific topics, such as the 364 Atlantis series, 262 Study Group series or the 281 series for the Prayer Healing group. However most of the readings were given to individuals, and it should be kept in mind that the information given was tailored specifically for the person receiving it. In particular, most of the people requesting readings were Christians, and thus such information was given as would be familiar and meaningful to them. However the readings made clear that no person or religion has a monopoly on the approach to God. (One woman who asked whether she should associate with the A.R.E. received this response: "This is identified with the Christian forces. Hold fast to the basic principles in that phase of same. There may be help there, but not as identified with same. This is the identification - the Christ-like principle!") You may find as I have that most of the information given through Mr. Cayce is universal in nature, and may be of interest to any seeker.

---

What is needed most in the earth today? That the sons of men be warned that the day of the Lord is near at hand, and that those who have been and are unfaithful must meet themselves in those things which come to pass in their experience. 51482 5/29/44

#### IN THE BEGINNING

In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. How? The mind of God moved, and matter, form, came into being. 262-78

**Spirit is life; the Mind is the builder; the Physical is the result.** 349-4

All souls were created in the beginning, and are finding their way back to whence they came. 3744-5

In the beginning, all souls that were as portions of the thought of God were given the opportunity for expression, as to be companions for that Creative Force - or God. 2420-1

**The entity was ever a part of the Universal**  
Consciousness, but was given the will...that it might be individual, knowing itself to be itself and yet one with the Creative Forces. 2524-1

(Q) The first problem **concerns** the reason for creation. Should this be given as God's desire to experience Himself, God's desire for companionship, God's desire for expression, or in some other way?

(A) God's desire for companionship and expression.

(Q) The second problem concerns that which is variously called evil, darkness, negation, sin. Should it

be said that this condition existed as a necessary element of creation, and the soul, given free will, found itself with the power to indulge in it, or lose itself in it? Or should it be said that this is a condition created by the activity of the soul itself? Should it be described, in either case, as a state of consciousness, a gradual lack of awareness of self and self's relation to God?

(A) It is the free will and its losing itself in its relationship to God.

(Q) The third problem has to do with the fall of man. Should this be described as something which was inevitable in the destiny of souls, or something which God did not desire, but which He did not prevent once He had given free will? The problem here is to reconcile the omniscience of God and His knowledge of all things with the free will of the soul and the soul's fall from grace.

(A) He did not prevent, once having given free will. For, He made the individual entities or souls in the beginning. For, the beginnings of sin, of course, were in seeking expression of themselves outside of the plan or the way in which God had expressed same. Thus it was the individual, see?

Having given free will, then-though having the foreknowledge, though being omnipotent and omnipresent,-it is only when the soul that is a portion of **God chooses** that God knows the end thereof.

(Q) The fourth problem concerns man's tenancy on earth. Was it originally intended that souls remain out of earthly forms, and were the **raças** originated as a necessity resulting from error?

(A) The earth and its manifestations were only the expression of God and not necessarily as a place of tenancy for the souls of men, until man was created-to meet the needs of existing conditions.

(Q) The fifth problem concerns an explanation of the Life Readings. From a study of these it seems that there is a trend downward, from early incarnations, toward greater earthliness and less mentality. Then there is a swing upward, accompanied by suffering, patience, and understanding. Is this the normal pattern, which results in virtue and oneness with God obtained by free will and mind?

(A) This is correct. It is the pattern as it is set in Him. 5749-14

(Q) Define sin and original sin, or what was original sin? Please explain.

(A) It may be defined in one word, • disobedience!

In the beginning, the perfect man was given all the attributes of the Father-God, in ideal environments prepared by God for man's material manifestation. Let's draw the comparisons of man made perfect through experience, and man willfully being disobedient:

In the first we find man listening to those influences which were at variance to God's way. Then in the temple, even at twelve, we find the perfect man seeking, asking, and answering questions as to man's relationship to God. 262-125

Error or separation began before there appeared what we know as the earth, the heavens; or before space was manifested. 262-115

## INITIAL PROJECTIONS OF SOULS IN THE EARTH

(Q) May we assume that the term "entangle" means a soul's participation and immersion in a form or system of creative expression which was not necessarily intended for such participation and immersion, as the earth?

(A) To be sure, there are those consciousnesses or awarenesses that have not participated in nor been a part of earth's physical consciousness; as the angels, the archangels, the masters to whom there has been attainment, and to those influences that have prepared the way.

Remember, as given, the earth is that speck, that part of creation where souls projected themselves into matter, and thus brought that conscious awareness of themselves entertaining the ability of creating without those forces of the spirit of truth. 5755-2

There lived in this land of Atlantis one Arnilius, who had first noted that of the separations of the beings as inhabited that portion of the earth's sphere or plane of those peoples into male and female as separate entities, or individuals. As to their forms in the physical sense, these were much rather of the nature of thought forms, or able to push out of themselves in that direction in which its development took shape in thought-much in the way and manner as the amoeba would in the waters of a stagnant bay, or lake, in the present. As these took form, by the gratifying of their own desire for that as builded or added to the material conditions, they became

hardened or set-much in the form of the existent human body of the day, with that of color as partook of its surroundings much in the manner as the chameleon in the present. 364-3

These, then, are the manners in which the entities, those beings, those souls, in the beginning partook of, or developed. Some brought about monstrosities, as those of its (that entity's) association by its projection with its association with beasts of various characters. Hence those of the Styx, satyr, and the like; those of the sea, or mermaid; those of the unicorn and those of the various forms-these projections of what? The abilities in the psychic forces (psychic meaning, then, of the mental and the soul...)

Hence the greater development of that called occult, or psychic forces, during the Atlantean period-and the use of same, and the abuse of same-was during its first thousand years...

Hence we have that which has been given through many of the sources of information, or the channels for individuals-and in those, these, the entity-as a voice upon waters, or as the wind that moved among the reeds and harkened, or again as when the morning stars sang together and the sons of God beheld the coming of man into his own, through the various realms as were brought by the magnifying of, or the deteriorating of, the use of those forces and powers as manifested themselves in a material area, or those that partook of carnal to the gratification of that that brought about its continual hardening and less ability to harken back through that from which it came, and partaking more and more oft h a t upon which it became an eater of. 36410

The entity was in the Atlantean land and in those periods before Adam was in the earth. The entity was among those who were then "thought projections", and the physical being had the union of sex in the one body, and yet a real musician on pipes or reed instruments. 5056-1

Before this we find the entity was in that land that has been termed Zu, or Lemuria, or Mu. This was before the sojourn of peoples in perfect body form; rather when they may be said to have been able to-through those developments of the period-be in the body or out of the body and act upon materiality. In the spirit or in flesh these made those things, those influences, that brought destruction; for the atmospheric pressure in the earth in the period was quite different from that experienced by the physical being of today. 436-2

In the land now known as Utah or Nevada, when the first peoples were separated into groups as families... The entity developed much and gave much to the people who were to succeed in that land, and in the ruins as are found in the mounds and caves in the northwestern portion of New Mexico may be seen some of the drawings the entity then made, some ten million years ago. 2665-2

In the Atlantean land, during those **periods** when there were the divisions between those of the Law of One and the sons of Belial, and the offspring of what was the pure race and those that had projected themselves into creatures that became as the sons of men (as the terminology would be) rather than the creatures of God.

1416-1

The entity was among the children of the Law of One that succumbed to the wiles,-and it may be well interpreted in that answer recorded in Holy Writ,-“Ye shall not **surely** die (Genesis 3:4), but it is pleasant for the moment, and for the satisfying of longings within.” Thus did the entity begin to use spiritual forces for the satisfying of material appetites.

2850-1

(Q) Explain the “Sons of God-Daughters of Men-Sons of Man.”

(A) . . .**the influences** of those souls that sought material expression pushed themselves into thought forms in the earth... Then, as those expressed they were called the Sons of the Earth or Sons of Man.

When the Creative Forces, God, made then the first man-or God-man-he was the beginning of the Sons of God.

Then those souls who entered through a channel made by God-not by thought, not by desire, not by lust, not by things that separated continually-were the Sons of God, the Daughters of God. The Daughters of Men, then, were those who became the channels through which lust knew its activity; and it was in this manner then that the conditions were expressed as given of old, that the Sons of God looked upon the Daughters of Men and saw that they were fair, and lusted!

262-119

**All** thought forms in matter were put away-through the experience of Noah.

257-201

## CREATION OF THE FIVE RACES

Man, in Adam (as a group; not as an individual), entered into the world (for he entered in five places at once, we **see-called** Adam in one, see?)

900-227

(Q) Are the places designated for the beginning of the five races correct?

(A) As we find, these are changed, in that: Those in the **Gobi**, the **yellow**. The **white-rather** in the Carpathians than India, though this is the change to which they are made. The red, of course, in the Atlantean and in the American. The brown in the **Andean**. The black in the plain and the Sudan, or in African.

(Q) Where was the Carpathian region?

(A) Aarat.

(Q) Where is the location? Is it on the map today?

(A) Southern part of Europe and Russia, and Persia and that land. Caucasian mountains.

(Q) Why was the number five selected for the projection of the five races?

(A) This, as we find, is that element which represents man in his physical form, and the attributes to which he may become conscious from the elemental or spiritual to the physical consciousness. As the senses; as the sensing of the various forces that bring to man the activities in the sphere in which he finds himself.

This, to be sure, may be expanded upon. This must bear in the same relation to that as did exist, to the promise that He will come again. Does any individual group think of themselves so exalted as that only to one peoples will He appear as in the beginning, so shall it ever be, that man's indwelling must recognize that not only must his desires carnally be crucified, but all elements that make for the awareness of the spiritual manifestations in the material plane!

(Q) Did the appearance of what became the five races occur simultaneously?

(A) Occurred at once.

(Q) Describe the earth's surface at the period of the appearance of the five projections.

(A) This has been given. In the first, or that known as the beginning, or in the Caucasian and **Carpathian**, or the Garden of Eden, in that land which lies **now** much in the desert, yet much in mountain and much in the rolling lands there. The extreme northern portions were then the southern portions, or the polar regions were then turned to where they occupied more of the tropical and semi-tropical regions; hence it would be hard to discern or disseminate the change. The Nile entered into the Atlantic Ocean. What is now the Sahara was an inhabited land and very fertile. What is now the central portion of this country, or the Mississippi basin, was then **all** in the ocean; only the plateau was existent, or the regions that are now portions of Nevada, Utah and Arizona formed the greater part of what we know as the United States. That along the Atlantic board formed the outer portion then, or the lowlands of Atlantis. The **Andean**, or the Pacific coast of South America, occupied then the extreme western portion of Lemuria. The Urals and the northern regions of same were turned into a tropical land. The desert in the Mongolian land was then the fertile portion. This may enable you to form **some** concept of the status of the earths representations at that time! The oceans were **then** turned about; they no longer bear their names, yet from whence obtained they their names? What is the legend, even, as to their names?

(Q) Are the following the correct places? Atlantean, the red.

(A) Atlantean and American, the red race.

(Q) Upper Africa for the black?

(A) Or what would be known now **as** the more western portion of upper Egypt for the lack. You see, with the changes-when there came the uprisings in the Atlantean land, and the sojourning southward-with the turning of the axis, the white and yellow races came more into that portion of Egypt, India, Persia and Arabia.

(Q) There was no original projection in upper India?

(A) This was a portion rather of the white and the yellow as represented. Let these represent the attributes



of the physical, or the senses and what forms they take, rather than calling them white, black, yellow, red and green, etc. What do they signify in the sensing? Sight, vision-white. Feeling-red. Black-gratifying of appetites in the senses. Yellow-mingling in the hearing. What is the law of the peoples that these represent? Their basic thoughts run to those elements! 364-13

## THE FIRST WORLD

The entity during the first of the appearances of man in the earth's plane, during that period when the five appeared. The entity then was in that now of the Nevada and Utah. 195-14

The land (Gobi) was among those in which there was the first appearance of those that were as separate entities or souls disentangling themselves from material or that we know as animal associations. For the projections of these had come from those influences that were termed Lemure, or Lemurian, or the land of Mu. 877-10

The Sons of Belial were of one group, or those that sought more the gratifying, the satisfying, the use of material things for self, without thought or consideration as to the sources of such nor the hardships in the experiences of others. Or, in other words, as we would term it today, they were those without a standard of morality.

The other group-those who followed the Law of One-had a standard. The Sons of Belial had no standard, save of self, self-aggrandizement.

Those entities that were then the producers (as we would term today), or the laborers, the farmers or the artisans, or those who were in the positions of what we would call in the present just machines, were those that were projections of the individual activity of the group.

And it was over these then, and the relationships that they bore to those that were in authority, that the differences arose. 877-26

Again we find an experience in the Atlantean land, when there were those disturbing forces-or just previous to the first disturbing forces that brought the first destruction in the continent, through the application of spiritual things for self-indulgences of material peoples.

Those were the periods as termed in thy Scripture when "The sons of God looked upon the daughters of men, and saw them as being fair."

In the experience the entity held fast to the Law of One. This brought many material sorrows, but implanted that which is as a portion of the entity; to know evil, to know good, when it is in the surroundings of the entity. 1406-1

We find the entity was in the land of the present nativity, during those periods when there were the first of the activities of those peoples in the lands which now

represent a portion of Arizona, New Mexico, Colorado, Utah.

There the entity was among those who made for the associations with those activities when the great powers or nations-through those influences as brought by the activities in Egypt, India, the Gobi, the Og-cooperated in one great cause.

The entity then was a leader among those peoples for the alleviating of man's influence upon that created by man in the enormous animals that had lost control by the influences of the powers of suggestion in the associations of the spirit-or sons of men-upon the animal world.

The entity's name then, as would be sounded, would be Oum-om. 1211-1

In the one before this we find in the days when the peoples of the nations were gathered as one to defend self against the fowls of air and beast of field. The entity among those as would be called an envoy to such gatherings, and came to that gathering in what would now-this period-present, be called lighter than air machines. 2749-1

(Q) What was the date B.C. of this gathering?

(A) 50,722 262-39

The entity was in the Indian land or in those periods of Saad as the leader the ruler..

The entity then was among those who were of the group who gathered to rid the earth of the enormous animals which overran the earth, but ice, the entity found, nature, God, changed the poles and the animals were destroyed. 5249-1

## THE SECOND WORLD

In the one before this we find in a strange land, now unknown in the world's experience; that lying westward from what is NOW southern California and Mexico. In this land the entity ruled as with an iron hand, for-from and through this land-many were the escapes from the various upheavals that occurred in those olden periods when there were the divisions of waters and the divisions of land, and dry land appeared. In this experience the entity lost, and in the aggrandizing of selfish interests. In the name Olu. 2669-1

Before that the entity was in the Atlantean land, at those periods when there were the second divisions, or when there was the destruction of the lands which made Poseidia the remaining portion in which there was the greater activity of the sons of the Law of 'One.

Those were the periods in which there was the application of much of that being discovered or rediscovered today, in the application of power to modes of transit, as well as the use of nature's means for a helpful force in giving greater crops for individual consumption. Also they were the periods when a great deal of thought was given as to conveniences of every

nature; as the lift or the elevating activities developed by that entity, as well as the application of defense as well as offensive principles. 2526-1

Before that we find the entity was in the Atlantean land, during those periods when there were those determining as to whether there would be the application of the laws of the children of One, or the sons of Belial in turning into destructive channels those influences of infinite power as were being gained from the elements as well as from what is termed spiritual or supernatural powers in the present.

These we find the entity wavered oft between the choices; and when the destruction came about, by the use of those rays as were applied for the beneficial forces, the entity was found **among** those who had misapplied the abilities.

In the application then of self from those experiences, as Entezor, we find that the influences of the atomic energies, of the electrical forces as of every nature, become an instrument for activity in which good or bad may come.

The entity is drawn to same, but what will ye do with same? Will ye use same for beneficial or beneficent effects, for helpful influences, or for destruction? 1792-2

(Q) What was the date of the Peruvian incarnation as given in Life Reading, and what was the disturbance in the earth as mentioned? Give such details as will clear up this period.

(A) As indicated from that just given, the entity was in Atlantis when there was the second period of disturbance — which would be some twenty-two thousand, five hundred (22,500) before the periods of the Egyptian activity covered by the Exodus; or it was some twenty-eight thousand (28,000) before Christ, see? 470-22

### THE **THIRD** WORLD

The entity was in what is now called the Gobi land, with the children of the Sun. Then in the name Taoi, the entity was a priestess in the Temple of Gold, that is yet to be unearthed, that there may be more known of those things that are as old as the earth itself. 2402-2

The entity was in that land known now as the Peruvian, during the period of the Ohums, before the Incals and the peoples of the Poseidian land entered. 1916-S

In the one before this we find in the days of the peoples coming from the waters in the submerged areas of the Southern portion as is now of Peru, when the earth was divided, and the people began to inhabit the earth again. One entity among those who succeeded in gaining the higher grounds, and then in the name of (which was changed afterwards) Omrui, and changed to Mosases, for the entity became the ruler and the guide, or the patriarch of that age and gave much assistance to the few as was gathered about the entity. 470-2

The Atlanteans are all exceptional. They either wield woe or great development. And their influences are felt, whether the individual recognizes it in himself or not...

This entity as we find, as in most of the Atlanteans' experiences, requires a great deal of mental and oft physical activity to satisfy, or to fill the self. For it is a very active mind!

The entity was in the Atlantean land during those periods between the second and the last upheavals; when there were the great antagonistic feelings between the sons of Belial and the children of the Law of One. The entity was among the children of the Law of One who made the greater overtures to those peoples for the acknowledging of the laborers, and to make their experiences easier, those laborers that were considered by many as merely **things** rather than individual souls. 1744-1

In the city of Poseidon... (the entity) acted as the priestess in the Temple of Light... who oversaw the activities of the communications between the various lands-as from Om, Mu, the hierarchy land in that **now** known as the United States, in that particular portion of Arizona and Nevada, that are as a portion of the Brotherhood of those people from Mu. 812-1

From what was left of Lemuria, or Mu-in what is now lower California, portions of the valleys of death (an Atlantean priestess) journeyed there to see, to know.

And during those experiences much was set up that may be of interest to the entity, that will be a part of the discoveries of natures or natural formations in what is now the Canyon Island.

For this was the entity's place of the temple. 1473-1

Before that we find the entity was in that land now known as Mu, or the vanished land of the Pacific, the Peaceful; during those periods when many of those had risen to power when there were being those banishments and preparations for the preserving; for they had known that the land must be soon broken up.

The entity was among those that journeyed from Mu to what is **now** Oregon; and there still may be seen something of the worship as set up, in what was the development from that set up by the entity's associates, as the totem or the family tree.

In that experience the entity was in the same sex as at present, but among those that were the leaders; for then the women ruled-rather than men. 630-2

Then, what took place during the period, or periods, when it was being broken up? What became of the inhabitants? What was the character of their civilization? Are there any evidences of those, or any portion of, the inhabitants' escape? The position of the continent, and the like, **must** be of interest to peoples in

the present day, if either by inference that individuals are being born into the earth plane to develop in the present, or are people being guided in their spiritual interpretation of individuals' lives or developments by the spirits of those who inhabited such a continent. In either case, if these be true, they are wielding-and are to wield-an influence upon the happenings of the present day world.

The position as the continent Atlantis occupied, is that as between the Gulf of Mexico on the one hand-and the Mediterranean upon the other. Evidences of this lost civilization are to be found in the Pyrenees and Morocco on the one hand, British Honduras, Yucatan and America upon the other. There are some protruding portions within this that must have at one time or another been a portion of this great continent. The British West Indies or the Bahamas, and a portion of same that may be seen in the present-if the geological survey would be made in some of these-especially, or notably, in Bimini and in the Gulf Stream through this vicinity, these may be even yet determined. 364-3 2/16/ 32

(Q) What were the principal islands called at the time of the final destruction?

(A) Poseidia and Aryan and Og. 364-6

In the one before this we find in that land known as Atlantis, and the entity among those present when the destruction came, and ever present in the entity is fear of turmoils, riots, or of earthquakes. These really cause shudders even, in the inmost being of the entity. The name then Sailuen. The entity gained through that period, gaining in the attempt (though failing in same) to prevent the activities of the peoples towards self-engorgement, or the taking on of self in the manner of worshipping self's abilities rather than applying the self as the channel or the motive through which universal forces might act. 2886-1

## EXODUSFROMATLANTIS

With the realization of the children of the Law of One that there was to be the final breaking up of the Poseidian-Atlantean lands, there were the emigrations with many of the leaders to the various lands. 1007-3

Before that (and that which the entity is meeting most in self in the present), the entity was in Atlantis during those periods when there were the separations, just before the breaking up of Poseidia.

The entity then controlled those activities where communications had been established with other lands, and the flying boats that moved through air or water were the means by which the entity carried many of those to the Iberian land, as well as later those groups in the Egyptian land-when there had been the determining that the records should be kept there. 3184-1

Before that we find the entity was in the land now know as or called Egypt, yet the entity was a native of the Atlantean land-and one that made a visit and became active in many of the lands to which the Atlanteans went and made their various settlements in that period.

Hence the entity was among the daughters of the Law of One, being a priestess of the temple in the Poseidian land; among those that went to the Egyptian land with those peoples for the establishing of the associations; also visiting those that established themselves in now the Pyrenees or the eastern portion of the continental Europe, and those that established themselves in what is now known as a portion of America-in Arizona, New Mexico, Colorado, and those portions of the land.

Then the entity's name was Assemelea. 11442

Before that the entity was in the Atlantean land when there were those periods of the last upheavals, or the disappearance of the isles of Poseidia. The entity was among those groups that went into what later became known as the Inca. For the entity then was in the line of the house of Inca, and was the mother of an Inca in the Peruvian land as called in the present. The name then was Secunduca. 3611-1

Before that we find the entity was in the land of the present nativity during those periods when there was the breaking up of the islands in now the South Seas, and the combinations of those that made for the changes in those environments of those peoples.

The entity then was among those first that have become known as the cave or cliff dwellers, in that portion now known as Utah, Arizona, Colorado, New Mexico. In those environs and places did the entity make for its activities, in the name then Un-nn. 252-1

in Atlantean land during the periods of exodus due to foretelling or foreordination of. activities which were bringing about destructive forces. Among those who were not only in Yucatan but in the Pyrenees and Egyptian land, for the manners of transportation and communications through airships of that period were such as Ezekiel described at a much later date.

1859-1 (EZEKIEL 1 425 and 10 9-17)

In the Atlantean land during those periods when there were the activities that brought about the last destruction through the warring of Sons of Law of One and Sons of Belial-among those sent to what later became the Yucatan land of the Mayan experiences. 1599-1

In Atlantis when there was the breaking up of the land, came to what was called the Mayan land or what is now Yucatan-entity was the first to cross the water in the plane or air machine of that period. 1710-3

In Atlantean land during period of egress before final destruction-coordinated departursactivities-journied to

Central America where some of the temples are being uncovered **today-began** practice of cremation, ashes may be found in one of temples prepared for same. 914-1

In land **now known as Yucatan, when there were** establishments from **Atlantean land-entity in** temple as a **recorder-were periods of dissension with those in authority; when there** were the decisions of most of the people to join with the movement to what is now portions of Arizona-entity chose to remain-records may eventually be discovered again. 5245-1

HLC: You will give an historical treatise on the origin and development of the Mayan civilization, answering questions.

EC: Yes. In giving a record of the civilization in this particular portion of the world, it should be remembered that more than one has been and will be found as research progresses.

That which we find would be of particular interest would be that which superseded the Aztec civilization, that was so ruthlessly destroyed or interrupted by Cortez.

In that preceding this we had rather a combination of sources, or a high civilization that was influenced by injection of forces from other channels, other sources, as will be seen or may be determined by that which may be given.

**Fromtimeascountedinthepresentwewouldtum back to 10,600 years before the Prince of Peace came into the land of promise, and find a civilization being disturbed by corruption from within to such measures that the elements join in bringing devastation to a stiff-necked and adulterous people.**

With the second and third upheavals in Atlantis, there were individuals who left those lands and came to this particular portion then visible.

But, understand, the surface was quite different from that which would be viewed in the present. For, rather than being a tropical area it was more of the temperate, and quite varied in the conditions and positions of the face of the areas themselves.

In following such a civilization as a historical presentation, it may be better understood by taking into consideration the activities of an individual or group-or their contribution to such a civilization. This of necessity, then, would not make for a complete historical fact, but rather the activities of an individual and the followers, or those that chose one of their own as leader.

Then, with the leavings of the civilization in Atlantis (in Poseidia, more specific), Iltar-with a group of followers that had been of the household of Atlan, the followers of the worship of the **onewith** some ten individuals-left this land Poseidia, and came westward, entering what would now be a portion of Yucatan. And there **began**, with the activities of the peoples there, the development into a civilization that rose much in the same manner as that which had been in the Atlantean land. Others had left the land later. Others had left earlier. There had been the upheavals also from the

land of Mu, or Lemuria, and these had their part in the changing, or there was the injection of their tenets in the varied portions of the land-which was much greater in extent until the final upheaval of Atlantis, or the islands that were later upheaved, when much of the contour of the land in Central America and Mexico was changed to that similar in outline to that which may be seen in the present.

The first temples that were erected by Iltar and his followers were destroyed at the period of change physically in the contours of the land. That now being found, and a portion already discovered that has laid in waste for many centuries, was then a combination of those peoples from Mu, Oz and Atlantis.

Hence, these places partook of the earlier portions of that peoples called the **Incal**; though the **Incals** were themselves the successors of those of Oz, or Og, in the Peruvian land, **and Mu** in the southern portions of that now called California and Mexico and southern New Mexico in the United States.

This again found a change when there were the injections from those peoples that came with the division of those peoples in that called the promise land. Hence we may find in these ruins that which partakes of the Egyptian, **Lemurian** and Oz civilizations, and the later activities partaking even of the Mosaic activities.

Hence each would ask, what specific thing is there that we may designate as being a portion of the varied civilizations that formed the earlier civilization of this particular land?

The stones that are circular, that were of the magnetized influence upon which the Spirit of the One spoke to those peoples as they gathered in their service, are of the earliest Atlantean activities in religious service, we would be called today.

The altars upon which there were the cleansings of the bodies of individuals (not human sacrifice; for this came much later with the injection of the Mosaic, and those activities of that area), these were later the altars upon which individual activities-that would today be termed hate, malice, selfishness, self-indulgence-were cleansed from the body through the ceremony, through the rise of initiates from the sources of light, that came from the stones upon which the angels of light during the periods gave their expression to the peoples.

The pyramid, the altars before the doors of the varied temple activities, was an injection from the people of Oz and Mu; and will be found to be separate portions, and that referred to in the Scripture as high places of family altars, family gods, that in many portions of the world became again the injection into the activities of groups in various portions, as gradually there were the turnings of the people to the satisfying and gratifying of self's desires, or as the **Baal** or Baalilal activities again entered the peoples respecting their associations with those truths of light that came from the gods to the peoples, to mankind, in the earth.

With the injection of those of greater power in their activity in the land, during that period as would be

called 3,000 years before the Prince of Peace came, those peoples that were of the Lost Tribes, a portion came into the land; infusing their activities upon the peoples from Mu in the southernmost portion of that called America or United States, and then moved on to the activities in Mexico, Yucatan, centralizing that now about the spots where the central of Mexico now stands, or Mexico City. Hence there arose through the age a different civilization, a mixture again.

Those in Yucatan, those in the adjoining lands as begun by Iltar, gradually lost in their activities; and came to be that people termed, in other portions of America, the Mound Builders.

Ready for questions.

(Q) How did the Lost Tribe reach this country?

(A) In boats.

(Q) Have the most important temples and pyramids been discovered?

(A) Those of the first civilization have been discovered, and have not all been opened; but their associations, their connections, are being replaced or attempting to be rebuilt. Many of the second and third civilization may never be discovered, for these would destroy the present civilization in Mexico to uncover same!

(Q) By what power or powers were these early pyramids and temples constructed?

(A) By the lifting forces of those gases that are being used gradually in the present civilization, and by the fine work or activities of those versed in that pertaining to the source from which all power comes.

For, as long as there remains those pure in body, in mind, in activity, to the law of the One God, there is the continued resource for meeting the needs, or for commanding the elements and their activities in the supply of that necessary in such relations.

5750-1 11/12/33

## THE HALL OF RECORDS

Much might be given respecting the activities of the entity who sealed with the seal of the Alta and Atlanteans, and the aid given in the completion of the pyramid of initiation (The Great Pyramid at Giza) as well as in the records that are to be uncovered...

In the record chambers there were more ceremonies than in calling the peoples at the finishing of that called the pyramid. For, here those that were trained in the Temple of Sacrifice as well as in the Temple Beautiful were about the sealing of the record chambers. For, these were to be kept as had been given by the priests in Atlantis or Poseidia (Temple), when these records of the race, of the developments, of the laws pertaining to One were put in their chambers and to be opened only when there was the returning of those into materiality, or to earth's experience, when the change was imminent in the earth; which change, we see, begins in '58 and ends with the changes wrought in the upheavals and the shifting of

the poles, as begins then the reign in '98 (as time is counted in the present).

Then, the sealings were the activities of Hept-supht with Ra-Ta and Isi-so and the king Araaraart, when there were the gatherings of all the peoples for this record sealing; with incense from the altars of the Temple and altars of the cleansings that were opened for their activities in the grounds about this tomb or temple of records; and many were the cleansings of the peoples from those things or conditions that separated them from the associations of the lower kingdoms that had brought those activities in all lands of the worship of Baalilal and of the desires as from carnal associations and influences...

This was in the period, as given, of 10,500 years before the entering of the Prince of Peace in the land to study to become an initiate in or through those same activities that were set by Hept-supht in this dedicating ceremony.

(Q) If the King's Chamber is on the 50th course, on what course is this sealed room?

(A) The sealed room of records is in a different place; not in this pyramid.

(Q) Give in detail what the sealed room contains.

(A) A record of Atlantis from the beginnings of those periods when the Spirit took form or began the encasements in that land, and the developments of the peoples throughout their sojourn, with the record of the first destruction and the changes that took place in the land, with the record of the sojournings of the peoples to the varied activities in other lands, and a record of the meetings of all the nations or lands for the activities in the destructions that became necessary with the final destruction of Atlantis and the buildings of the pyramid of initiation, with who, what, where, would come the opening of the records that are as copies from the sunken Atlantis; for with the change it must rise (the temple) again.

This in position lies, as the sun rises from the waters, the line of the shadow (or light) falls between the paws of the Sphinx, that was later set as the sentinel or guard, and which may not be entered from the connecting chambers from the Sphinx's paw (right paw) until the TIME has been fulfilled when the changes must be active in this sphere of man's experience.

(Q) Am I the one to receive directions as to where the sealed room is and how to find it?

(A) One of the two. Two, with a guide. Hept-supht, El-ka (?), and Atlan. These will appear. 378-16

There was not only the adding to the monuments, but the Atlanteans aided in their activities 'with the creating of that called the Pyramid, with its records of events of the earth through its activity in all of the ages to that in which the new dispensation is to come. 281-43

(Q) What was the date of the actual beginning and ending of the construction of the Great Pyramid?

(A) Was one hundred years in construction. Begun and completed in the period of Araaraart's time, with Hermes and Ra.

(Q) What was the date B.C. of that period?

(A) 10,490 to 10,390 before the Prince entered into **Egypt**. 5748-6

The pyramids, the house of records as well as the chamber in which the records are built in stone, were put together by song. 2462-2

Seek either of the three phases of the ways and means in which those records of the activities of individuals were preserved, - the one in the Atlantean land, that sank, which will rise and is rising again; another in **the place** of the records that leadeth from the Sphinx to the hall of records, in the Egyptian land; and another in the Aryan or Yucatan land, where the temple there is overshadowing same. 2012-1

(Q) In which pyramid or temple are the records mentioned in the readings given through this channel on Atlantis, in April, **1932?** [[364] series]

(A) As given, that temple was destroyed at the time there was the last destruction in Atlantis.

Yet, as time draws nigh when changes are to come about, there may be the opening of those three places where the records are one, to those that are the initiates in the knowledge of the One God:

The temple by Iltar will then rise again. Also there will be the opening of the temple or hall of records in Egypt, and those records that were put into the heart of the Atlantean land may also be found there-that have been kept, for those that are of that group.

The **records are one**. 5750-1 **11/ 12/33**

(Q) Who will uncover the history of the past in record form which are said to be near the sphinx in **Egypt?**

(A) As was set in **those records** of the law of One in Atlantis, that there would come three that would make of the perfect way of life. And as there is found those that have made, in their experience from their sojourn in the earth, a balance in their spiritual, their mental, their material experiences or existences, so may they become those channels through which there may be proclaimed to a seeking, a waiting, a desirous body, those things that proclaim how there has been preserved in the earth (that as is a shadow of the mental and the spiritual reservation of God to His children) those truths that have been so long proclaimed. Those, then, that make themselves that channel. 3976-15

## THE FOURTH WORLD

The entity was among those of the second generation of Atlanteans who struggled northward from Yucatan, settling in what is now a portion of Kentucky, Indiana,

Ohio; being among those of the earlier period known as Mound Builders.

Then the entity was among those who supplied to the peoples the fruits of the soil, learning how to crack corn, wheat and grain, that it might be prepared into foods through cooking-though much in those periods was taken raw. And in the present, as the entity may learn, the raw foods will contribute much to the entity's physical welfare-the green as well as other foods. 3528-1

In the one before the (first **Incal** period in Peru) we find the entity was among those first in that country now known as the Southwest, and among those who became the first cliff dwellers... The earthenware, that pieces of same may still be seen, though in earth's years thousands and thousands of years ago. 4805-1

Before that the entity was in the land of the present sojourn, but in the areas of the Southwest; for the entity then was among those called the Cliff Dwellers, being of those peoples who came up from Yucatan to the Northeast and to portions of Arizona and New **Mexico**-as now known. The entity was a teacher, a leader, a priestess of the people. 5729-1

Before that the entity was again in the land of the present nativity during those periods when activities were set up or established in the Southwest, by those who had **journeyed** from other lands when the Ten Tribes were carried away.

The entity was among those children born in that land, now a portion of Arizona and New Mexico. These portions of the land appeal in many ways to the entity-the wide open spaces, and yet there is the desire for home, for security, in mental as well as in spiritual as may apply in material things. 3513-1

The entity was then among the peoples, the Indians, of the Iroquois; those of noble birth, those that were the pure descendants of the Atlanteans, those that held to the ritualistic influences from nature itself.

Hence **all** nature, all experiences of nature, all natural forces **become** as a part of the entity's experience. 1219-1

## THE COMING CHANGES

Be it true that there IS the fact of reincarnation, and that souls that once occupied such an environ (Atlantis) are entering the earth's sphere and inhabiting individuals in the present, is it any wonder that-if they made such alterations in the **affairs** of the earth in their day, as to bring destruction upon themselves-if they are entering now, they might make many changes in the affairs of peoples and individuals in the present? 364-1 **2/3/32**

What an unusual record-and one of those who might be termed as physically the mothers of the world! For the entity was one of those in the ark.

In giving the interpretations of the records here, we find that there is much from which to choose. But these we choose with the desire and purpose to be the means of help to the entity in better fulfilling those purposes for which it has entered the earth's plane in varied periods of its experience.

For the entity has appeared when there were new revelations to be given. And again it appears when there are new revelations to be made.

May the entity so conduct its mind, its body and its purposes, then, as to be a channel through which such messages may come that are needed for the awakenings in the minds of men as to the necessity for returning to the search for their relationship with the Creative Forces or God.

For as has been given from the beginning, the deluge was not a myth (as many would have you believe) but a period when man had so belittled himself with the cares of the world, with the deceitfulness of his own knowledge and power, as to require that there be a return to his dependence wholly-physically and mentally-upon the Creative Forces.

Will this entity see such again occur in the earth? Will it be among those who may be given those directions as to how, where, the elect may be preserved for the replenishing again of the earth?

Remember, not by water-for it is the mother of life in the earth-but rather by the elements, fire.

3653-1 1/7/44

HLC: We seek at this time such information as will be of value and interest to those present, including T. Mitchell Hastings, Jr, in the next room, regarding the spiritual, mental and physical changes which are coming to the earth. You will tell us what part we may play in meeting and helping others to understand these changes...

EC: Yes; as each of you gathered here have your own individual development, yet as each seeks to be a channel of blessings to the fellow man, each attunes self to the Throne of universal information. And there may be accorded you that which may be beneficial, not only in thine own experience, but that which will prove helpful, hopeful, in the experience of others...

First, then: There is soon to come into the world a body; one of our own number here that to many has been a representative of a sect, of a thought, of a philosophy, of a group, yet one beloved of all men in all places where the universality of God in the earth has been proclaimed, where the oneness of the Father as God is known and is consciously magnified in the activities of individuals that proclaim the acceptable day of the Lord. Hence that one John, the beloved in the earth-his name shall be John, and also at the place where he met face to face [Peniel].

When, where, is to be this one? In the hearts and minds of those that have set themselves in that position

that they become a channel through which spiritual, mental and material things become one in the purpose and desires of that physical body!

As to the material changes that are to be as an omen, as a sign to those that this is shortly to come to pass-as has been given of old, the sun will be darkened and the earth shall be broken up in divers places-and then shall be proclaimed-through the spiritual interception in the hearts and minds and souls of those that have sought His way-that his star has appeared, and will point the way for those that enter into the holy of holies in themselves. For, God the Father, God the Teacher, God the director, in the minds and hearts of men, must ever be in those that come to know Him as first and foremost in the seeking of those souls; for He is first the god to the individual and as He is exemplified, as He is manifested in the heart and in the acts of the body, of the individual, He becomes manifested before men. And those that seek in the latter portion of the year of our Lord (as ye have counted in and among men) '36, He [He, Christ Spirit?] will appear.

As to the changes physical again: The earth will be broken up in the western portion of America. The greater portion of Japan must go into the sea. The upper portion of Europe will be changed as in the twinkling of an eye. Land will appear off the east coast of America. There will be the upheavals in the Arctic and in the Antarctic that will make for the eruption of volcanoes in the Torrid areas, and there will be shifting then of the poles-so that where there has been those of a frigid or the semi-tropical will become the more tropical, and moss and fern will grow. And these will begin in those periods in '58 to '98, when these will be proclaimed as the periods when His light will be seen again in the clouds. As to times, as to seasons, as to places, ALONE is it given to those who have named the name-and who bear the mark of those of His calling and His election in their bodies. To them it shall be given.

As to those things that deal with the mental of the earth, these shall call upon the mountains to cover many. As ye have seen those in lowly places raised to those of power in the political, in the machinery of nations' activities, so shall ye see those in high places reduced and calling on the waters of darkness to cover them. And those that in the inmost recesses of themselves awaken to the spiritual truths that are to be given, and those places that have acted in the capacity of teachers among men, the rottenness of those that have ministered in places will be brought to light, and turmoils and strifes shall enter. And, as there is the wavering of those that would enter as emissaries, as teachers, from the throne of life, the throne of light, the throne of immortality, and wage war in the air with those of darkness, then know ye the Armageddon is at hand. For with the great numbers of the gathering of the hosts of those that have hindered and would make for man and his weaknesses stumblingblocks, they shall wage war with the spirits of light that come into the earth for this awakening; that have been and are being called by those of the sons of men into the service of the living God. For He, as ye have

been told, is not the God of the **dead, not** the God of those that have forsaken Him, but those that love His coming, that love His associations among men-the God of the living, the God of Life! For, He is Life.

Who **shall** proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord in him that has been born in the earth in America? Those from that land where there has been the regeneration, not only of the body but the mind and the spirit of men, they shall come and declare that John Peniel is giving to the world the new order of things. Not that these that have been proclaimed have been refused, but that they are made **plain** in the minds of men, that they may know the truth and the truth, the life, the light, will make them free...

(Q) What are the world changes to come this year physically?

(A) The earth will be broken up in many places. The early portion will see a change in the physical aspect of the west coast of America. There **will** be open waters appear in the northern portions of Greenland. There will be new lands seen off the Caribbean Sea, and dry land **will** appear. There will be the falling away in India of much of the material suffering that has been brought on a troubled people. There **will** be the reduction of one risen to power in central Europe to naught. The young king son will soon reign. In America in the political forces we see a **re-stabilization** of the powers of the peoples in their own hands, a breaking up of the **rings**, the cliques in many places. South America **shall** be shaken from the uppermost portion to the end, and in the Antarctic off of **Tierra Del Fuego** land, and a strait with rushing waters.

(Q) To what country is the reference made regarding the young king?

(A) **In Germany.**

. . .if there is not the acceptance in America of the **closer** brotherhood of man, the love of the neighbor **as self**, civilization **must wend its way westward - and again must Mongolia, must a hated people, be raised.**

**3976-15 1/19/34**

The catastrophes of outside forces to the earth in '36 will come from the shifting of the equilibrium of the earth itself in space, with those consequential effects upon the various portions of the country-or world-affected by same.

. . . Not by a great deal is the present condition the most serious of even the present civilization, for this point was passed in the fall of '29 (twenty-nine) when there was given into the hands of two - yea three individuals - the FINANCIAL conditions and situations of the world. These represent as two upon the one side, ONE upon the dark side - or dark forces.

(Q) Who are the three individuals controlling the financial world in the present?

(A) **Warburg, Mellon, Morgan.** **3976-10 2/8/32**

(Q) What will be the type and extent of the upheavals in '36?

(A) The wars, the upheavals in the interior of the earth, and the shifting of same by the differentiation in the axis as respecting the positions from the Polaris center. **57484 7/1/32**

(Note that **geologists** have discovered that **indeed** the axis of rotation of the solid core of the earth differs from the axis of rotation of the exterior of the earth. The seismic data used to determine this goes back only to the early '60s, and scientists have assumed this is a 'normal' situation. The above reading suggests otherwise.)

(Q) Are details of the earth's eruptions in 1936 so fixed that you can give me an outline of the Pacific Coast area to be affected?

(A) All of **these are, as** is ever on or in such an activity, dependent upon individuals or groups who are in or keep an attitude respecting the needs, the desires, the necessary requirements in such a field of activity. That some are **dueand** will occur is written, as it were, but-as we find-as to specific date or time in the present this may not be given. **270-32 6/12/34**

(Q) How soon will the changes in the earth's activity begin to be apparent?

(A) When there is the first breaking up of some conditions in the South Sea (that's South Pacific, to be sure), and those as apparent in the sinking or rising of that **that's** almost opposite same, or in the **Mediterranean**, and the Etna area, then we may know it has begun.

(Q) How long before this will begin?

(A) The indications are that some of these have already begun, yet others would say these are **only** temporary. We would say they have begun. '36 will see the greater changes apparent, to be sure.

(Q) **Will** there be any physical changes in the earth's surface in North America? If so, what sections will be affected, and how?

(A) All over the country we will find many physical changes of a minor or greater degree. The greater change, as we will find, in America, will be the North Atlantic Seaboard. Watch New York! Connecticut, and the like.

(Q) When will this be?

(A) In this period. As to just when -

(Q) What, if any, changes will take place around Norfolk area, VA?

(A) No **material**, that would be effective to the area, other than would eventually become more beneficial - in a port, and the like. **311-8 4/9/32**

(Q) What is the primary cause of earthquakes? Will San Francisco suffer from such a **catastrophe** this year? If so, give date, time and information for the guidance of this body, who has personal property, records and a wife, all of which it wishes safety.

(A) We do not find that this particular district (San Francisco) in the present year will suffer the great **material damages that have been experienced** heretofore. While portions of the country will be affected, we find these will be farther east than San



**Francisco—or** those south, where there has not been heretofore the greater activity. The causes of these, of course, are the movements about the earth; that is, internally-and the cosmic activity or influence of other planetary forces and stars and their relationships produce or bring about the activities of the **elementals** of the earth; that is, the Earth, the Air, the Fire, the Water-and those combinations make for the replacements in the various activities.

**If there are the greater activities in the Vesuvius, or Pelee, then the southern coast of California-and the areas between Salt Lake and the southern portions of Nevada-may expect, within the three months following same, an inundation by the earthquakes.**

But these, as we find, are to be more in the southern than in the northern hemisphere. **270-35 1/21/36**

(Q) Three hundred years ago Jacob Boehme decreed Atlantis would rise again at this crisis time when we cross from this Piscean Era into the Aquarian. Is Atlantis rising now? Will it cause a sudden convulsion and about what Year?

(A) In 1998 we may find a great deal of the activities as have been wrought by the gradual changes that are coming about. These are at the periods when the cycle of the solar activity, or the years as related to the sun's passage through the various spheres of activity become paramount or Catamount [?] [Tantamount?] to the change between the Piscean and the Aquarian age. This is **a gradual, not a cataclysmic activity in the experience** of the earth in this period. 1602-3

Poseidia will be among the first portions of Atlantis to rise again. Expect it in sixty-eight and sixty-nine. Not so far away. **958-3 6/28/40**

There will be found much more gold in the lands under the sea than there is in the world circulation today...And as may be known, when the changes begin, these portions (Bimini, of the Bahamas) will rise among the first. **587-4**

The first highest civilization will be uncovered in some of the adjacent lands to the west and south of the isles (Bimini), see?

(Q) Is this the continent known as Alta or Poseidia?

(A) A temple of the Poseidians was in a portion of this land. 996-12

As to conditions in the geography of the world, of the country, changes are gradually coming about.

No wonder, then, that the entity feels the need, the necessity for change of central location. For, many portions of the east coast will be disturbed, as well as many portions of the west coast, as well as the central portion of the U.S.

In the next few years lands will appear in the Atlantic as well as in the Pacific. And what is the coastline of many a land now will be the bed of the ocean.

Even many of the battlefields of the present (1941 WWII) will be ocean, will be the seas, the bays, the lands over which the **neworder** will carry on their trade.

Portions of the now east coast of New York, or New York City itself, will disappear. This will be another generation, though. The southern portions of Carolina, Georgia will disappear. This will come first.

The waters of the Great Lakes will empty into the Gulf of Mexico rather than the waterway over which such discussions have been recently made (St. Lawrence seaway). It would be well if the new waterway were prepared.

Then the area where the entity is now located (Virginia Beach) will be among the safety lands, as will be what is now Ohio, Indiana and Illinois and much of the southern portion of Canada and the eastern portion of Canada. While, the western land is to be disturbed.

(Q) I have for many months felt that I should move away from New York City.

(A) This is well. There is too **much** unrest. There will continue to be the character of vibrations that to this body will be disturbing. Eventually, there will be the destructive forces there-though these will be in the next generation.

(Q) Will Los Angeles be safe?

(A) Los Angeles, San Francisco, most all of these will be among those that will be destroyed before New York even.

(Q) Is Virginia Beach to be safe?

(A) It is the center - and the only seaport and center - of the White Brotherhood. (1152-11 **8/13/41**)

(Q) In view of the uncertainty of existing conditions, did I act wisely in establishing my home in Norfolk?

(A) It's a mighty good place, and a safe place when turmoils are to arise, though it may appear that it may be in the line of those areas to rise, while many a higher land will sink. This is a good area to stick to. **2746-2**

(Q) What great change or the beginning of what change, if any, is to take place in the earth in the year **2,000** to 2,001 **A.D.?**

(A) When there is a shifting of the poles. Or a new cycle begins. **826-8**

(Q) What is the meaning of one thousand years that Satan is bound?

(A) Is banished. That, as there are the activities of the forty and four thousand-in the same manner **that the prayer of ten just should save a city, the deeds, the prayers of the faithful will allow that period when the incarnation of those only that are in the Lord shall rule the earth, and the period is as a thousand years.**

Thus is Satan bound, thus is Satan banished from the earth. The desire to do evil is only of him. And when there **are-as** the symbols-those only whose desire and purpose of their heart is to glorify the Father, these will be those periods when this shall come to pass.

Be ye **all** determined within thy minds, thy hearts, thy purposes, to be of that number!

(Q) In Rev. 21:1 what is the meaning of "a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea?"

(A) When the foundations of the earth are broken up by those very disturbances. Can the mind of man comprehend no desire to sin, no purpose but that the glory of the Son may be manifested in his life? Is this not a new heaven, a new earth? For the former things would have passed away. For as the desires, the purposes, the aims are to bring about the whole change physically, so does it create in the experience of each soul a new vision, a new comprehension.

For as has been given, it hath not entered the heart of man to know the glories that have been prepared, that are a part of the experiences of those that love only the Lord and His ways.

(Q) Please explain 2nd through 4th verse of Chapter 21—the new Jerusalem and no more death.

(A) Those then that are come into the new life, the new understanding, the new regeneration, there is then the new Jerusalem. For as has been given, the place is not as a place alone but as a condition, as an experience of the soul.

Jerusalem has figuratively, symbolically, meant the holy place, the holy city—for there the ark of the covenant, the ark of the covenant in the minds, the hearts, the understandings, the comprehensions of those who have put away earthly desires and become as the new purposes in their experience, become the new Jerusalem, the new undertakings, the new desires. 281-37

(Q) In what form does the anti-Christ come, spoken of in Revelation?

(A) In the spirit of that opposed to the spirit of truth. The fruits of the spirit of the Christ are love, joy, obedience, long-suffering, brotherly love, kindness. Against such there is no law. The spirit of hate, the anti-Christ, is contention strife, fault-finding, lovers of self, lovers of praise. Those are the anti-Christ, and take possession of groups, masses, and show themselves even in the lives of men. 281-16

(Q) What will the Aquarian Age mean to mankind as regards Physical, Mental and Spiritual development?

(A) Think Ye this might be answered in a word? These are as growths. What meant that awareness as just indicated? In the Piscean age, in the center of same, we had the entrance of Emmanuel or God among men, see? What did that mean? The same will be meant by the full consciousness of the ability to communicate with or to be aware of the relationships to the Creative Forces and the uses of same in material environs. This awareness during the era or age in the age of Atlantis and Lemuria or Mu brought what? Destruction to man, and his beginning of the needs of the journey up through that of selfishness.

Then, as to what will these be, • **ONLY** those who accept same will even become aware of what's going on about them! How few realize the vibratory forces as create influences from even one individual to another, when they are even in the same vibratory force or influence! And yet ye ask what will the Aquarian age bring in mind, in body, in experience?

(Q) Can a date be given to indicate the beginning of the Aquarian Age?

(A) This has already been indicated as the period when it should pass, but that is when it begins to affect. It laps over from one to another, as is the natural sources, as he holds to that which has been, which is. As has been indicated, we will begin to understand fully in '98.

1602-3

The time and times and half times shall pass, and then shall man come to know that in the temple, in the tabernacle of his own temple will he meet his God face to face!

257-201

## THE ELDER BROTHER

(Q) Please give the important re-incarnations of Adam in the world's history.

(A) In the beginning as Amilius, as Adam, as Melchizedek, as Zend, as Ur [?] [Enoch? GD's note: Perhaps Ur was prehistory person who established Ur of the Chaldees? I don't think he was mentioned anywhere else in the readings as an incarnation of Jesus.], as Asaph, as Jeshua-Joseph-Jesus.

Then, as that coming into the world in the second coming—for He will come again and receive His own, who have prepared themselves through that belief in Him and acting in that manner; for the spirit is abroad, and the time draws near, and there will be the reckoning of those even as in the first so in the last, and the last shall be first; for there is that Spirit abroad—He standeth near. He that hath eyes to see, let him see. He that hath ears to hear, let him hear that music of the coming of the Lord of this vineyard, and art thou ready to give account of that thou hast done with thine opportunity in the earth as the Sons of God, as the heirs and joint heirs of glory with the Son? Then make thine paths straight, for there must come an answering for that thou hast done with thine Lord! He will not tarry, for having overcome He shall appear even as the Lord and Master. Not as one born, but as one that returneth to His own, for He will walk and talk with men of every clime, and those that are faithful and just in their reckoning shall be caught up with Him to rule and to do judgment for a thousand years!

364-7

(Q) Is it true that Jesus is the only begotten son of God, and what does this mean?

(A) In this to give the full concept is to give the history then of all those who have entered into flesh without that act which man knows as copulation. For as those experiences Jesus, known as Jesus, the brother of this

entity, came into the earth, the first that were of the sons of God to enter flesh, there the first and only begotten of God. Again, as names would say, Enoch walked with God, became aware of God in his movements-s till t hat entity, that soulcalled Jesus-as Melchizedek, without father, without mother, came-still the soul of Jesus; the portion of God that manifests.

But each son, each daughter, through these very acts of the only begotten, of the son of Mary, of the first in the earth, of that without father and without mother, without days, without years-becomes then as the elder brother to all who are bomin the earth, as the maker, as the creator, as the first, as the last; as the beginning, as the end of man's soul's experience through the earth and throughout the spheres of consciousness in and about the earth.

Thus is He the only begotten, the firstborn, the first to know flesh, the first to purify it.

And so man in his concepts, in his understandings, in his wisdom of God, purifies-here a little, there a little.

1158-5

(Q) When did the knowledge come to Jesus that he was to be the Savior of the world?

(A) When he fell in Eden.

2067-7

(Q) Should the Christ-Consciousness be described as the awareness within each soul, imprinted in **pattern** on the mind and waiting to be awakened by the will, of the **soul's oneness with God?**

(A) Correct. That's the idea exactly!

(Q) Please list the names of the incarnations of the Christ, and of Jesus, indicating where the development of the man Jesus began.

(A) First, in the beginning of course; and then as Enoch, Melchizedek, in the perfection. Then in the earth as Joseph, Joshua, Jeshua, Jesus.

5749-14

(Q) What is the sign of his presence?

(A) The circle with the Cross; these make for the sign that all thou hast heard is fulfilled in Him.

423-3

(Q) He said He would come again. What about His second coming?

(A) The time no one knows. Even as He gave, not even the Son Himself. only the Father. Not until His enemies-and the earth-are wholly in subjection to His will, His powers.

(Q) Are we entering the period of preparation for His coming?

(A) Entering the test period, rather.

5749-2 6/28/32

What is meant by "the day of the Lord is near at hand"?

(A) That as has been promised through the prophets and the sages of old, the time-and half time-has been and is being fulfilled in this day and generation, and that soon there will again appear in the earth that one

through whom many will be called to meet those that are preparing the way for His day in the earth. The Lord, then, will come, "even as ye have seen him go".

(Q) How soon?

(A) When those that are His have made the way clear, passable, for Him to come.

262-49 7/9/33

Then, as there is prepared the way by those that have made and do make the channels for the entering in, there may come into the earth those influences that will save, regenerate, resuscitate, hold-if you please-the earth in its continued activity toward the proper understanding and proper relationships to that which is the making for the closer relationships to that which is in Him alone.. .

Ye have seen His Spirit-in the leaders in all realms of activity, whether in the isles of the sea, the wilderness, the mountain or in the various activities of every race, every color, every activity of that which has produced and does produce contention in the minds and hearts of those that dwell in the flesh.

For, what must be obliterated? Hate, prejudice, selfishness, backbiting, unkindness, anger, passion, and those things of the mire that are created in the activities of the sons of men.

Then again He may come in body to claim His own. Is He abroad today in the earth? Yea, in those that cry unto Him from every corner; for He, the Father, hath not suffered His soul to see corruption; neither hath it taken hold on those things that make the soul afraid. For, He is the Son of Light, of God, and is holy before Him And He comes again in the hearts and souls and minds of those that seek to know His ways.

57495 5/1/34

(Q) Please explain what is meant by "He will walk and talk with men of every clime". Does this mean he will appear to many at once or appear to various peoples during a long period?

(A) As given, for a thousand years He will walk and talk with men of every clime. Then in groups, in masses, and then they shall reign of the first resurrection for a thousand years; for this will be when the changes materially come.

In the manner as He sat at the peace conference in Geneva, in the heart and soul of a man not reckoned by many as an even unusually Godly man; yet raised for a purpose, and he chose rather to be a channel of His thought for the world. So, as there has been, so will it be until the time as set..

He will not leave thee desolate, but will come to thee-but not unless invited; for, as in the periods, as we find, when He walked with men as the Master among men, or when as Joseph in the kingdoms that were raised as the saving of his peoples that **sold** him into bondage, or as the priest of Salem in the days when the call came that a peculiar peoples would proclaim his name, He has walked and talked with men...or in the garden when those temptations came, or as the first begotten of the Father that came as Amilius in the Atlantean land and

allowed himself to be led in ways of selfishness. Hence, as we see, all the various stages of developments that have come to man through the ages have been those periods when He walked and talked with man...

In all those periods that the basic principle was the Oneness of the Father, He has walked with men. **364-8**

(Q) When Jesus the Christ comes the second time, will He set up His kingdom on earth and will it be an everlasting kingdom?

(A) Read His promises in that ye have written of His words, even as "I gave". He shall rule for a thousand years. Then shall Satan be loosed again for a season.

**5749-4**

For man is made a co-creator with the Godhead... As is given from the beginning: God said, "Let there be light" and there was light, and that light became, and is the light of the world. For it is true that light, that knowledge, the understanding of that Jesus who became the Christ, is indeed thy elder brother and yet Creator, Maker of the universe; and thus are ye a part of same and a directing influence.

Then, as ye practice His principles ye become aware of same. And these are first: "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, thy mind, thy soul, and thy neighbor as thyself." **5124-1**

**GC:** You will have before you the entity **[602]**, at home, .... Md. You will give a mental and spiritual reading for this entity, considering the anxiety keenly felt over the safety and welfare of her son, Private **[670]**, who is in the Quartermaster Corps of the USA in Ft. Sill, **Okla.** Please give advice, guidance and help to this confused mind, and answer the questions, as I ask them:

**EC:** Yes, we have the body, the inquiring mind, **[602]**.

In giving a mental and spiritual reading, especially in relationship to those confusions and disturbances in the body and mind, many varied phases of the mental and spiritual life, the mental and spiritual experience, must be taken into consideration.

To be sure, there is **buildd** within the consciousness of the entity, **[602]**, an aversion to strife, to war, and to all phases of military activity. The entity should consider, however, if this consciousness bears the same relationships to all other forms of activity that may more subtly destroy the soul, rather than the body.

Remember, there has been given, "Fear rather him who may destroy body and soul than he who may destroy the body alone."

In an hour of trial, when there are influences abroad that would change or mar, or take away that freedom which is the gift of the Creative Forces to man; that man might by his own innate desire be at-one with God, the Father, as was manifested in Jesus, the Christ; there should be the willingness to pattern the life, the emergencies, the exigencies as may arise, much in the way and manner as the Master indicated to each and every soul.

According to the pattern of the life, as He gave, one should ever be able to give the evidence of the hope and faith that lies within the individual.

One should ever be able and willing even to lay **down** the life for the principles that may live as He indicated; that of freedom not only from the fear of servitude, not only from the dictates as to the manner in which love, sacrifice, obedience may be administered to the faith and hope that lies within him, but that the whole earth may indeed be a better place for an individual, for those that are to come to reside in.

To be sure, taken as a personal application, these become in a manner necessarily as of self. But self, too, may needs be offered on the altar of sacrifice.

When He withheld not His own Son, how can ye ask Him to withhold thine? If it needs be that necessary that the world may know that He, the Father, sent the Son into the earth?

Live in thine own life that which is worthy of acceptance, of that ye ask of the Father, and He will not withhold any good thing from thee.

Are thy principles, thy activities in keeping with His purposes?

Know and realize that the earth is the Lord's, with all its turmoils and its strifes, with **all** its hates and jealousies, with all its political and economic disturbances. And His ways, the Lord's ways, are not past finding out. By living them in the little things day by day may that surety in self, that sureness in Him, be thine. For His promises have been and are sure. And, as His promise has been, "Let not your heart be troubled; ye believe in God," believe also in the Christ, who gave "If ye love me ye will keep my **commandments**, and I and the Father will come and abide with thee day by day."

So live, then, so think, so act in thy conversation, in thy convocation with thy fellow man, that others may know, too, that the Lord walks with thee.

Then, so instill that hope, that encouragement in the mind and in the heart of thy son that he, too, may live, may look to **the** Lord for strength, for purpose, for sureness; and that in the peace which is to come there will be the needs for his activity among the children of men, that the way of the Lord may be sure in the earth.

If this attitude is kept, if the Lord be with thee, who may be against thee!

Let that mind be in thee, then, as was in Christ Jesus, who boldly claimed His relationship to God, and so lived among His fellow man.

He, too, showed anger at the house of the Lord being turned into a den of those who took advantage of their fellow man. He, too, brought-through that expression, that **hope-that** knowledge **to those** that seek His face, that He knows the heartache of disappointment, He knows the heartaches of fear, even as He prayed, "If it be possible, let this cup pass from me-not my will, O God, but Thine be done."

In that attitude, in that pronouncement may there come to thee that strength, that knowledge that ye can, ye may trust wholly in the Lord. '

Ready for questions.

(Q) Could he be transferred to some post closer to his home?

(A) This may be, but is it best? Rather than making the environ by doubts and fears, isn't it better to put it all into the hands and upon the heart of thy Elder Brother? yea, in the hands of thy God? seeking that He use thee and thy body, as manifest in thy son, to bring hope and love and peace to the children of men.

(Q) Is it best for him where he is?

(A) As He gave,-consider well His answer, the Master,-"No man is in this or that position save by the grace of God." Then the opportunities are where he is in the present, **usingthe** knowledge of the material, the mental and spiritual life for the betterment of his fellow man where he is.

That impress, that instill in self.

(Q) Is there any other branch of the service where he could serve, that would be less dangerous?

(A) No portion of the service is dangerous if he is put in the hands of God, and the self and the son live that as is known! Look upon that condition which disturbs not from the material angle but from the standpoint of a mental and a spiritual blessing to others in the opportunities offered.

(Q) Could he better serve in some defense work outside the military service?

(A) If it had been, would not this have been the place? If what has been given is studied, these questions will be answered. Fill the place better where ye are, and the Lord will open the way! Is this not in keeping with His life, His teachings? These are worthy of acceptance. These are worthy of being trusted, of being lived.

602-7 1/8/42

Forms, shadows, colors, numbers,-even as to astrological aspects,-have their place. But know that they are but as lessons, as signposts **along** the way. They indicate, as the weather vane, from what direction the impulse may arise,-the easier way of any activity; and are not, thus, the thing nor the power itself. For, learn indeed what it meaneth in this respect, and apply in self's **ownway**, "Know, O child that seeks, the Lord thy God is One!"

What meaneth this, then? That every form of activity of expression is but a movement that the individual soul, in the pattern or image of the Maker, may be more aware that those forces or influences in the experience are not only as signs and omens but may indeed be used as stepping-stones for the greater comprehension of the relationship self bears with that universal **consciousness**.

Then indeed, as thy Elder Brother has shown in His journey through the planes of experience-physical, mental and spiritual-it becomes necessary that ye become aware of yourself beingyourself yet one with Him.

These are not merely philosophical presentations to thee, but as ye study thy own abilities, as ye are persuaded here or there to look into this form or that

manner, be not deceived by any. **For** as hath been given of old, it is not who or what will bring thee a message from above, or who from over the seas may present thee with a formula by which ye may use the influences about you to the greater application of materialization of forces. For lo, it is within thine own self. He is nearer than thy hand, closer than thy foot.

For it is in Him ye live, and move, and have thy being. And it is in thy body-temple, where He hath promised to meet thee-in the holy of holies.

How, then, do ye keep that holy of **holies**? Cluttered with strange fires? with unholy water? with vain sayings, or signs of the moon or of the sun, or the visitation of seasons? Hath He not warned concerning these?

"These I have hated; but he that will **dothe** will of the Father, him have I loved." And, "As ye do it unto the least of these, thy brethren, ye do it unto thy Maker."

1992-1

## REINCARNATION

(Reincarnation) is questioned by many, yet there is this period when the fact needs stressing to answer many questions.

1152-12

Life and its expressions are one. Each soul or entity will and does return, or cycle, as does nature in its manifestations about man; thus leaving, making or presenting-as it were-those infallible, indelible truths that it-Life-is continuous. And though there may be a few short years in this or that experience, they are one; the soul, the inner self being purified, being lifted up, that it may be one with that first cause, that first purpose for its coming into existence.

And though there may be those experiences here and there, each has its relationships with that which has gone before, that is to come. And there has been given to each soul that privilege, that choice, of being one with the Creative Forces.

938-1

Ye, as a soul-entity, in the beginning sought companionship with God; losing that companionship by choice of that which would satisfy or gratify a material desire only. Thus, ye, as the Master, enter again and again, ye come to fulfill the law, the law that brought thy soul into being to be one with Him.

Hence at this particular period when there are changes to be wrought, ye have work to do. For ye have been made conscious of the fact that all have fallen short of their duty, and that if they would bring the earth to be a place in which even their own offspring would live, they must learn to search for their God. And they must put away those gods of the Sidonians, those gods of the heathen, gods of self, gods of gratifying of flesh; and crucifying the flesh-in mind, in body, in spirit-show thyself worthy of being given the opportunity to express thyself to others.

3645-1 1/15/44

(Q) Must each soul continue to be reincarnated in the earth until it reaches perfection, or are some souls lost?

(A) Can God lose itself, if God be God-or is it submerged, or is it as has been given, carried into the universal soul or consciousness? The **soul** is not lost; the individuality of the soul that separates itself is lost. The reincarnation or the opportunities are continuous until the soul has of itself become an entity in its whole or has submerged itself.

(Q) If a soul **fails** to improve itself, what becomes of it?

(A) That's why the reincarnation, why it reincarnates; that it may have the opportunity. Can the will of man continue to defy its Maker? 826-8

## SOULDEVELOPMENT

Only in disillusion and suffering, in time, space, and patience, does he come to the wisdom that his real will is the will of God, and in its practice is happiness and heaven. 2537-1

In patience we become aware of our souls, of our identity, of our being each a corpuscle, as it were, in the great body, in the heart of our God. And He has not willed otherwise. 262-114

O that all would realize, come to the consciousness that what we **are-in** any given experience, or **time-is** the combined result of what we have done about the ideals that we have set. 1549-1

An ideal, then...must be of the spiritual nature-that has its foundation in Truth, in God, in the Godhead. . .the gift of God to man is an individual soul that may be one with **Him**, and that may know itself to be one with Him and yet individual in itself, with the attributes of the whole, yet not the whole. 262-1 1

Study, then, to show thyself approved unto an ideal. What is an ideal? This ye must first determine in thine self...

Choose that most in keeping with thy purposes, thy aims, thy desires. Are thy desires and thy purposes ideal, in thine own consciousness? What is thy ideal, spiritually?

Then from that may be gained the ideal mentally. And the material is the outgrowth of those two. 2981-1

He without an ideal is sorry indeed; he with an ideal and lacking courage to live it is sorrier still. Know that. 2402-1

(Q) Are hereditary, environment and will equal factors in aiding or retarding the entity's development?

(A) Will is the greater factor, for it may overcome any or all of the others; provided that will is made one with the pattern see? For, no influence of heredity,

environment or what not, surpasses the will; else why would there have been that pattern shown in which the individual soul, no matter how far astray it may have gone, may enter with Him into the holy of **holies**? 5749-14

(Q) From which side of my family do I inherit most?

(A) You have inherited most from yourself, not from family! The family is only a river through which it (the entity, soul) flows! 1233-1

Not so much self-development, but rather developing the Christ Consciousness in self, being selfless, that He may have His way with thee, that He-the Christ-may direct thy ways, that He will guide thee in the things thou doest, thou sayest. 281-20

That which is so hard to be understood in the minds or the experiences of many is that the activities of a soul are for self-development, yet must be selfless in its activity for it, the soul, to develop. 275-39

(Q) Am I an old or a young soul in evolutionary growth?

(A) All souls are from one. It is the application that has grown to be that which is termed old or young soul. For all souls were created in the one. The entity has applied self, the entity has kept self close in contact with many who have through the awareness of the oneness of God's purpose with man been attempting to bring him to-that awareness; and hence an "Old" soul in service. 1770-2

As has been given as one of the immutable laws, that which the mind of a soul - a **soul** - dwells upon it becomes; for mind is the builder. And if the mind is in attune with the law of the force that brought the soul into being, it becomes spiritualized in its activity. If the mind is dwelling upon or directed in that desire towards the activities of the carnal influences, then it becomes destructive in such a force. 262-63

Thoughts are things **and...as** the mental dwells upon these thoughts, so does it give strength, power to things that do not appear. And thus does indeed there come that as is so oft given, that faith is the evidence of things not seen. 906-3

It has ever been and is, even in materiality, a reciprocal world. "If ye will be my people, I will be thy God." If ye would know **good**, do Good. If ye would have life, give life. If ye would know Jesus, the Christ, then be like Him..."There is no life without death, there is no renewal without the dying of the old." 1158-9

For thy Father-God is within self and without. Then as ye treat thy fellow man, ye are treating thy Maker. These are immutable, unchangeable laws of divine origin - not of man's concept. What ye sow in body, in mind, in

purpose, ye must one day in the physical being, reap. That, too, is immutable, unchangeable. Thus what ye do to others, ye are doing to thyself, whether it is in abuse of privileges, abuse of body, abuse of mind, or just the opposite in adding to the abilities in any direction.

3198-3

(Q) Is there some karmic debt to be worked out with either or both and should I stay with them until I have made them feel more kindly toward me?

(A) These- What is karmic debt? It is merely self being met, in relationship to that they **themselves** are working out and not a karmic debt **between** but a karmic debt of self that may be worked out **between** the associations that exist in the present! And this is true for every soul.

1436-3

Offenses must come...but woe to him that bringeth same to pass.

272-9

Self-glory, self-exaltation, self-indulgence becometh those influences that become as abominations to the Divinity in each soul; and separate them from a knowledge of Him.

12931

Live with this in mind (and every soul may take heed): Ye shall pay every whit, that ye break of the law of the lord. For the law of the Lord is perfect; it converteth the soul.

3559-1

Whatsoever an entity, an individual sows, that must he reap. That as law cannot be changed. As to whether one meets it in the letter of the law or in mercy, in grace, becomes the choice of the entity. If one would have mercy, grace, love, friends, one must show self in such a manner to those with whom one becomes associated. For like begets like.

5001-1

Only as ye forgive those who blamed thee without a cause, who have spoken vilely of thee without reason, can the giver of life and light forgive thee.

3660-1

In sacrifice there is penance, but grace doth more greatly abound to him who sheds the love of the Father upon those that the body may contact from day to day.

99-8

Repentance, then, is "Not my will but Thine, O Lord, be done in me, through me, day by day."

2533-7

In love the world was saved and made; in hate and indifference the world may be destroyed.

9033

In England, during the Crusades, the entity learned much; that they who fight, they who war against their brethren find themselves warring as against the spirit of truth. For that as is sown in dread, must be reaped in turmoil and in strife.

1226-1

Let that rather be thy watchword, "I am my brother's keeper." Who is thy brother? Whoever, wherever he is that bears the imprint of the Maker in the earth, be he black, white, gray or grizzled, be he young, be he Hottentot, or on the throne or in the president's chair.

2780-3

Put not then the cup of misunderstanding nor a stumbling block in the way of the weakest brother.

900428

Then only as an individual gives itself in service does it become aware. For as the divine love has manifested, does become manifested, that alone ye have given away do ye possess. That alone is the manner in which the growth, the awareness, the consciousness grows to be

1472-1

You'll not be in heaven if you're not leaning on the arm of someone you have helped.

3352-1

(Q) [993]: Before we can have cooperation, do we not have to offer ourselves?

(A) In cooperation is the offering of self to be a channel of activity, of thought; for as line upon line, precept upon precept, comes, so does it come through the giving of self; for he that would have life must give life, they that would have love must show themselves lovely, they that would have friends must be friendly, they that would have cooperation must cooperate by the **giving** of self to that as is to be accomplished-whether in the bringing of light to others, bringing of strength, health, understanding, these are one in Him.

262-3

It is not by might and power but by the little leaven that leaveneth the whole lump. It is line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little, that each soul seeks and finds its relationship to the Creative Forces or God-so that it may apply same in its own experience with the fellow man.

2509-2

No fault, no hurt comes to self save that thou hast created in thine consciousness, in thine inner self, the cause.

262-83

In the earth, one only meets self. Learn then, to stand oft aside and watch self pass by-even in those influences that at times are torments to thy mind.

3292-1

Know that each soul constantly meets its own self. No problem may be run away from. Meet it **now!**

1204-3

It is error to sit still. As we have oft indicated, do something; but never find fault, -and **do not** condemn self for being this or that. Just do with thy might what thy hands find to do!

2437-1

Do not attempt to be good, but rather good for something!

830-3

Faint not because of disappointment. Rather use even failures as stepping-stones for gaining the greater vision of the light. 311-8

It is the 'try' that is the more often counted as righteousness, and not the success or failure. 931-1

You only fail if you quit trying. 3292-1

"Whom the Lord loveth He chasteneth", and purgeth every one; for corruption may not inherit eternal life, and must be humed up. 262-26

Fear is the root of most of the ills of **mankind**...To overcome fear is to fill the mental, spiritual being with that which wholly casts out fear: the love manifest in the world through Him. 5459-3

Be mad and sin not. Righteous anger is a virtue. He that has no temper is very weak; but he who controls not his temper is much worse. 3416-1

Know, as the Teacher of teachers gave, there is one proof for all: "By their fruits ye shall know them" (Matthew 7:20). 2067-1

Make concessions only to the weak. Defy the strong if they are in the wrong. 1336-1

Better to trust one heart and that deceiving, than doubt one heart which if believing would bless thy life with true understanding. 2448-2

See only the pure, the good! For until ye are able to see within the life and activities of those ye have come to hate the most, something ye would worship in thy Creator, ye haven't begun to think straight. Look for good and ye will find it. Search for it, for it is as a pearl of great price. For there is so much good in the worst, that ye may never judge another by thine own short standards. 1776-1

Speak gently, speak kindly to those who falter. Ye know not their own temptations, nor the littleness of their understanding. Judge not as to this or that activity of another; rather pray that the light may shine even in their lives as it has in thine. 2112-2

Keep the heart singing! Keep the mind clear! Keep the face toward the light! The shadows then are behind. 39-4

See the funny side-don't be too serious. Remember, He even made a joke as He walked to the Garden to be betrayed. Remember, He looked with love upon His disciple that denied Him, even as He stood alone. 2448-2

Don't think a grouchy man can ever raise a headed cabbage or a tomato that will agree as well as those raised by a man who laughs and tells a good joke, though it may be smutty. 470-35

Never worry as long as you can pray. When you can't pray-you'd better begin to worry. For then you have something to worry about. 3569-1

He that would know the way must be oft in prayer, Joyous prayer, **knowing** He **giveth** life to as many as seek in sincerity to be a channel of blessing to someone. 281-12

The prayers of ten may save a city; the prayers of twenty-five may save a nation-as the prayers of **one** may! But in union there is strength. 15982

Prayer is supplication for direction, for understanding. Meditation is listening to the Divine within. 1861-19

For the prayer is as a supplication or a plea to thy superior; yet thy meditation is that thou art meeting on **common ground**. 281-28

Let the strength of self not be wavered by advice of the many; but turn to the within, knowing that the power lieth there. For when ye enter into the holy of **holies**, in thine own self, there ye may find strength that is beyond compare of man's physical abilities. 1752-1

What is Meditation?

It is not musing, not daydreaming; but as ye find your bodies made up of the physical, mental and spiritual, it is the attuning of the mental body and the physical body to its spiritual source...

It is the attuning of thy physical and mental attributes seeking to know the relationships to the Maker. That is true meditation...

Ye must learn to meditate, - just as ye have learned to walk, to talk...

There must be a conscious contact with that which is a part of thy body-physical, thy body-mental, to thy soul-body or thy superconsciousness. The names indicate that ye have given it metes and bounds, while the soul is boundless - and is represented by many means or measures or manners in the expressions in the mind of each of you.

But there are physical contacts which the anatomist finds not, or those who would look for imaginations or the minds. Yet it is found that within the body there are channels, there are ducts, there are **glands**, **there** are activities that perform no **one knows what!** in a living, moving, thinking being. In many individuals such become dormant. Many have become atrophied. Why? **Non-**usage, non-activity! Because only the desires of the appetite, self-indulgences and such, have so glossed over or used up the abilities in these directions that they become only wastes as it were in the spiritual life of an



individual who has so abused or misused those abilities that have been given him for the greater activity.

Then, purify thy mind if ye would meditate. How? Depending on what is thy concept of purification! Does it mean to thee a mixing up with a lot of other things, or a setting aside of self, a washing with water, a cleansing or purifying by fire or what not?

Purify thy body. Shut thyself away from the cares of the world. Think on that as ye would do to have thy God meet thee face to face. "Ah," ye say "but many are not able to speak to God!" Many, you say, are fearful. Why? Have ye gone so far astray that ye cannot approach Him who is all merciful? He knows thy desires and thy needs, and can only supply according to the purposes that ye would perform within thine own self.

Then, purify thy body, physically. Sanctify thy body, as the laws were given of old, for tomorrow the Lord would speak with thee - as a father speaketh to his children. Has God changed? Have ye wandered so far away? Know ye not that, as He has given, "If ye will be my children, I will be thy God"? and "Though ye wander far away, if ye will but call I will hear"?

If any of you say, "Yes, but it was spoken to those of old, - we have no part in such," then indeed ye have no part. They that would know God, would know their own souls, would know how to meditate or to talk with God, must believe that He is, - and that He rewards those who seek to know and to do His biddings.

That He gave of old is as new today as it was in the beginning of man's relationship or seeking to know the will of God, if ye will but call on Him within thine inner self! Know that thy body is the temple of the living God. there He has promised to meet thee!

In thine own house, in thine own body there are the means for the approach, - through the desire first to know Him; putting that desire into activity by purging the body, the mind of those things that ye know or even conceive of as being hindrances, - not what someone else says! It isn't what you want someone else to give! As Moses gave of old, it isn't who will descend from heaven to bring you a message, nor who would come from over the seas, but Lo, ye find Him within thine own heart, within thine own consciousness! if ye will meditate, open thy heart, thy mind! Let thy body and mind be channels that ye may do the things ye ask God to do for you! Thus ye come to know Him. 281-41

(Q) Please explain in detail the steps I should take in meditation.

(A) In whatever manner that to thine own consciousness is a cleansing of the body and of the mind, that ye may present thyself **clean** before thyself and before thy God, do! Whether washing of the body with water, purging of same with oils, or surrounding same with music or incense. But do that thy consciousness directs thee! Not questioning! For he that doubteth has already built his barrier!

Then, meditation upon that which is thy highest ideal within thyself, raise the vibrations from thy lower

self, thy lower consciousness through the centers of thy body to the temple of thy mind, thy brain, thy eye that is single in purpose; or to the glandular forces of the body as the Single Eye.

Then, listen - listen! For it is not in the storm, not in the noise, but the still small voice that rises within.

826-11

(In meditation) never open self, my friend, without surrounding self with the spirit of the Christ, that ye may ever be guarded. 440-8

(Q) What is my best time for meditation?

(A) As would be for all, two to three o'clock in the morning. 462-8

(Q) (What is the best polarity for this body) as it meditates?

(A) Facing the East, to be sure. 2072-12

There is that access, then, that way, to the Throne of grace, of mercy, of peace, of understanding, within thine own self. For He has promised to meet thee in thine own temple, in thine own body, through thine own mind. And as He has given of old, as He has made manifest in the flesh, as He has spoken to thee and to thy fellow man again and again, consecrate your mind, your body; purge same in a manner that to thee in thine own consciousness has made and does make thee as receiving thy Lord, thy God! And then enter into the holy of holies, within thine own consciousness; turn within; see what has prompted thee. And He has promised to meet thee there. And there shall it be told thee from within the steps thou shouldst take day by day, step by step. Not that some great exploit, some great manner of change should come within thine body, thine mind, but line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little, there a little.

For it is, as He has given, not the knowledge alone but the practical application-in thine daily experience with thy fellow man-that counts. Not that one seeks out this, that or the other manner, or the other channel; for lo, He is within thine own self-yet without, that He may guide, guard, direct thy ways day by day! It is just in living those things in the material manner that are the fruits of the Spirit, that bring with them their reward-which maketh for the understanding within thee: Love ye one another; show forth gentleness, kindness; speak softly, even to those that are harsh; upbraid not; condemn not; be long-suffering. Be patient, even with thine own self; not as some men count patience, but as an activative principle, as an activative experience in thine own self. For as the Master of Masters has said; in patience possess ye, do ye become aware of, thine own soul!

See, know, feel, understand that thy body is but the shell, the shadow, the encasement of thy soul; with thy mind that is both spiritual and material, that partakes of heaven-yea, and of hell also. For as He has given, as heaven is His home and earth His footstool, "as ye are in me and I in thee and I in the Father," so abide ye; that ye

may know. Not that, then, which maketh afraid. Not that which is of fear. Not that which is of trembling. But the love, the peace, the patience, the mercy, that casteth out fear; the patience that turneth away wrath; the mercy that doeth good even unto those that speak evil of thee, who despitefully use thee, who say unkind things about thee. Speak gently. These make for that within self which brings the awareness such that thy face, thy body, shines even as a light unto Him. For if He abides with thee, who can make thee afraid?

Will He abide with thee? "As ye call, so will I **harken**." For by what judgment are ye to be judged? "Inasmuch as ye do it unto the least of these, my children, ye do it unto me."

Keep the faith that thou hast had. **know** He is; and as ye seek Him He rewards those that diligently seek Him. 922-1

Know that the entering of a manifested life is not chance, but through the will of the Father. For He hath not willed that any soul should perish, but hath with every temptation offered a channel, an opportunity-through the choice of the entity-to meet self.

Hence know that a life-experience is not for self-indulgence, **self-gratification**,—but that ALL things shall be according to the will of the Creator in Whom ye live and move and have thy being! 1745-1

## FINAL WORDS

(Cayce had the following dream after his arrest and trial in Detroit for practicing medicine without a license. Although he was acquitted, this experience was an excruciating one for Cayce, and caused hi much inner turmoil and selfdoubt about whether he was really doing God's will.)

(Q) Interpret and explain the dream which Edgar Cayce has on March 3, 1936 in which he was born again over two hundred years in the future and traveled to various sections of this country where records of Edgar Cayce could be found.

[Detailed dream not read:]

[3/3/36 On train from Detroit to Va. Beach, following end of court action in re: his arrest in 11/35 for "practicing medicine without a license". See 254-89 Reports of Court Trial.]:

I had been born again in 2158 A.D. in Nebraska. The sea apparently covered all of the western part of the country, as the city where I lived was on the coast. The family name was a strange one. At an early age as a child I declared myself to be Edgar Cayce who had lived 200 yrs. before. Scientists, men with long beards, little hair, and thick glasses, were called in to observe me. They decided to visit the places where I said I had been born, lived and worked, in Ky., Ala., N.Y., Mich., and Va. Taking me with them the group of scientists visited these places in a long, cigar-shaped, metal flying ship which moved at high speed. Water covered part of Ala.

Norfolk, Va. had become an immense seaport. N.Y. had been destroyed either by war or an earthquake and was being rebuilt. Industries were scattered over the countryside. Most of the houses were of glass.

Many records of my work as Edgar Cayce were discovered and collected. The group returned to Nebraska taking the records with them to study.

(A) These experiences, as has oft been indicated, come to the body in those manners in which there may be help, strength, for periods when doubt or fear may have arisen. As in this experience, there were about the entity those influences which appeared to make for such a record of confusion as to appear to the material or mental-minded as a doubting or fearing of those sources that made for the periods through which the entity was passing in that particular period.

And the vision was that there might be strength, there might be an understanding that though the moment may appear as dark, though there may be periods of the misinterpreting of purposes, even these will be turned into that which will be the very proof itself in the experiences of the entity and those whom the entity might, whom the entity would in its experience through the earth plane, help; and those to whom the entity might give hope and understanding.

This then ~~is the~~ interpretation. As has been given, 'Fear not.' Keep the faith; for those that be with thee are greater than those that **would** hinder. Though the very heavens **fall**, though the earth shall be changed, though the heavens shall pass, the promises in Him are sure and will stand-as in that day-as the proof of thy activity in the lives and hearts of those of thy fellow man.

For indeed and in truth ye know, "As ye do it unto thy fellow man, ye do it unto thy God, to thyself." For, self effaced, God may indeed glorify thee and make thee stand as one that is called for a purpose in the dealings, the relationships with thy fellow man.

Be not unmindful that He is nigh unto thee in every trial, in everytemptation, and hath not willed that thou shouldest perish.

Make thy will then one with His. Be not afraid.

That is the interpretation. That the periods from the material angle as visioned are to come to pass matters not to the **soul**, but do thy duty TODAY! TOMORROW will care for itself.

These changes in the earth will come to pass, for the time and times and half times are at an end, and there begin those periods for the readjustments. For how hath He given? "The righteous **shall** inherit the earth."

Hast thou, my brethren, a heritage in the earth?

294-185 6/30/36

## Other Prophecies

Here is a collection of other Native and non-Native prophecies which comes from the internet web site "Morgana's Observatory" (<http://www.dreamscape.com/morgana/index.htm>), an excellent source of a wide variety of prophetic material. I cannot vouch for the accuracy or source for all of the following prophecies, but I know several of them to be authentic and suspect the balance are authentic as well:

---

Helena P. Blavatsky, Russian Seer  
(1831-1891)

"We are at the close of the cycle of 5,000 years of the present Aryan Kali Yuga or dark age. This will be succeeded by an age of light. Even now under our very eyes, the new Race or Races are preparing to be formed, and that is in America that the transformation will take place, and has already silently commenced. This Race will be altered in mentality and will move toward a more perfect spiritual existence."

"That the periodical sinking and reappearance of mighty continents, now called Atlantean and Lemurian by modern writers, is not fiction will be demonstrated. It is only in the 20th century that portions, if not the whole, of the present work will be vindicated."

"A world destruction as happened to Atlantis 11,000 years ago... instead of Atlantis all of England and parts of NW European coast will sink into the sea, in contrast, the sunken Azores region, the Isle of Poseidonis, will again be raised from the sea."

Count Louis Harmon (Cheiro)  
(1927 Prediction)

"Germany and Italy will war against France and England. In the coming 50 years an earthquake zone will develop in NE Pacific coast of Peru up through to the Arctic regions. Eastern cities of the U.S. will be affected, and parts of New York will be destroyed in 50-100 years. A series of earthquakes will cause the Azores to rise and Atlantis will resurface and be explored."

Wovoka, Paiute Prophet  
(1858-1932)

"When I was in the other world with the Old Man, I saw all the people who have died. But they were not sad. They were happy while engaged in their old-time occupations and dancing, gambling, and playing ball. It was a pleasant land, level, without rocks or mountains, green all the time, and rich in abundance of game and fish. Everyone was forever young."

"After showing me all of heaven, God told me to go back to Earth and tell His people you must be good and love one another, have no quarreling, and live in peace with the whites; that you must work, and not lie or steal; and that you must put an end to the practice of war."

"If you faithfully obey your instructions from on high, you will at last be reunited with your friends in a renewed world where there would be no more death or sickness or old age. First, though, the Earth must die. Indians should not be afraid, however. For it will come alive again just like the sun died and came alive again. In the hour of tribulation, a tremendous earthquake will shake the ground. Indians must gather on high ground. A mighty flood shall follow. The water and mud will sweep the white race and all Indian skeptics away to their deaths. Then the dead Indian ancestors will return, as will the vanished buffalo and other game, and everything on Earth will once again be an Indian paradise."

Tim Sikyea, Yellowknife Tribe

"Many of the dreams or visions don't necessarily mean the end; they could also indicate a change. Our people say that people who are not spiritually in tune can't adapt to this change. They won't have the necessary physical, mental and spiritual strength to change themselves. It is being said that humanity will become mad."

"There will be an energy or something similar that will influence the atmosphere. As a consequence, the pressure in our brains will increase by 35 percent. But people who have become spiritually clear and accept these approaching energies of the cosmos will be able to be secure from this human cleansing process."

Seventy to 80 percent of humanity are not spiritually but materialistically oriented. That's why they won't be able to endure this transformation; they will go mad. They will kill themselves and destroy everything around them. It will be like a madhouse. Probably, somebody will then push the famous button because of this."

Brave Buffalo, Brule Sioux Nation

"According to the Sacred Hoop and the prophecies, it is time to share this ancient wisdom. It is time for the Great

Purification. We are at a **point** of no return. The **two-**legged are about to bring destruction to life on Earth. It's happened before, and it's about to happen again. The Sacred Hoop shows how all things go in a circle. The old become new; the new becomes old. Everything repeats. White people have no culture. Culture is having roots in the Earth. People without culture don't exist very long because Nature is God. Without a connection to Nature, the people drift, grow negative, destroy themselves. In the beginning we had one mind, and it was positive, a thing of beauty, seeing beauty everywhere.

"The Earth People never wrote anything down and had no written language. They knew that, if they wrote anything down, it would be disastrous. If you write something down, you don't have to remember it. And mind goes off into unconsciousness. It becomes negative, or unconscious force."

Sun Bear, 'Bear Tribe' Medicine Man

"These changes might not be convenient for humans, but the earth will make them anyway. As a dog shakes itself to get rid of fleas, the earth will generate earthquakes, volcanoes and climactic changes to rid itself of surplus and troublesome humans. If it is necessary that a lot of people die off during **the** major changes, and that the people that survive are conscious people that are responsible for the earth and are living on it in harmony and love and respect, then that is what is supposed to happen...."

"The people who will survive will be those who love life and affirm life in every way they can. They will be people who are willing to make a conscious change in the way they view life and in their actions toward all creation. They will not be those sitting with their rifles over a can of beans. The survivors will be people reaching out for another level of consciousness and seeking communication with the Creator and the Earth. They will be people living close to the earth far from large cities who are able to grow and harvest or gather their own food from the wild."

"I'm trying to reach out and create a larger group of people who are in harmony with the earth. These people won't get wiped out in the process of the earth changes. If you know where to be and how to prepare, this can be a very comfortable, interesting and exciting time."

The 1989 San Francisco quake and the 1993 Northridge one were just warnings of much larger ones that will rock California."

Sun Bear, who was part Chippewa Indian, medicine chief of the Bear Tribe, and a teacher and visionary said, in 1987,

"The earth is an intelligent living being! Before any major changes ever happen upon the Earth Mother, it has warned people. . . . You're going to see major changes here. When I asked the Spirit about the earthquakes, and whether these things could be changed, and what would happen? Spirit said it's already sealed. It's already happening...."

A volcano that will devastate the Seattle area is foretold is an ancient prophecy from Washington State's Puyallup tribe, which says, 'The time will come when Little Sister will speak, and Grandfather will answer. And the land will be swept clean to the ocean.' Sun Bear explained that Donald Matheson, a leader of the Puyallup tribe, moved his people to Idaho in 1979 because he believed it was time for this prophecy to be fulfilled. In March 1980, the mountain that we call little sister began to whisper. May 18th of 1980, the Little Sister spoke with a cubic mile of mountain that was spread over the northwest area, and many other parts of the world... 'The Little Sister is called Mount St. Helens. Soon, the Grandfather is going to answer so much bigger. That one is called Mt. Rainier.' Indian prophecies also foretold worldwide environmental catastrophes such as the greenhouse effect, "changes in the seasons and in the weather, disappearance of wildlife, famine," and the ozone hole, which was referred to as a "hole in our lodging."

**Traditional Dineh (Navajo) View of the "Hopi/Navajo Dispute"**  
(Dineh, which is pronounced *dee-neh'*, is the traditional name of the Navajo people.)

I intentionally have avoided a political tone in this collection. As Grandfather Commanda says, "It's too late for political action. Pray!" Or, as expressed by Starhawk in the 10th Anniversary edition of her classic book on the rebirth of the Goddess Movement *Spiral Dance*: "Political awareness can become a tyranny of its own, not least because it locks us into the issues and perspectives of a particular time. But when we are looking at questions of the sacred, we move beyond time. To create the changes in consciousness needed to transform society at a deep level, we need insights broader than those the issues of the moment can provide. . . true spirituality must also take us beyond the will, down into the realms of mystery, of letting go, of echoing questions rather than resounding answers."

In Hopiland, however, often there is the blurring of distinctions that once seemed clear. The Hopi say they are a microcosm of the world. I have seen and felt this myself. In this way, the political struggles of the moment take on a greater, more spiritual significance. In the following statements from the Traditional Dineh living on Big Mountain look for the archetypes of the spiritual struggle which encompasses us all.

As I report elsewhere in this collection, the chief dispute here is between the Hopi Tribal Council and the traditional people of both the Hopi and Dineh. Traditional Hopi do believe it is right for Dineh to be living on Big Mountain, since Hopi prophecy holds that the Dineh will occupy and protect the land. However, traditional Hopi have told me that Big Mountain is a particularly important part of the land over which the Hopi were given stewardship in their Covenant with the Creator. The Traditionals say that when they were driven from Oraibi in 1906 and established Hotevilla, there were no Dineh living on Big Mountain at that time. The traditional Dineh say Big Mountain is their ancestral homeland. In this collection of material I present both points of view.

(I have resisted including material I have found from the Israeli internet site: "The Temple Mount in Jerusalem" ([http:// www.templemount.org/](http://www.templemount.org/)) The parallels between the so-called "Hopi/ Navajo" conflict and the "Jewish/ Palestinian" conflict are truly remarkable.)

---

Sovereign Dineh Nation Alert  
e-mail # [sdn@primenet.com](mailto:sdn@primenet.com)  
home page address [http:// www.primenet.com/~sdn/](http://www.primenet.com/~sdn/)

Roberta Blackgoat, Chairperson, Sovereign Dineh Nation  
Sovereign Dineh Nation Office  
P.O. Box 40319  
Flagstaff, AZ 86004  
phone 520/522-8683

Re: Statement to be read and submitted to International Day of the World's Indigenous People, August 9, 1996, United Nations Headquarters, New York

I bring to you today greetings and statements from the Dineh residents living on Black Mesa, who today, as for the last 22 years, are resisting the efforts of the United

States government to evict us from our ancestral land. 10,000 people have been forcibly relocated to clear the land for coal mining. Only a few hundred families remain, living in the shadows of North America's largest coal field, which has been carved into the heart of our sacred land. We who continue to resist are political and religious prisoners, divided by miles of barbed wire fence on our ancestral land.

First I will begin by reading this statement from Roberta Blackgoat, who was born and has lived for 76 years in Thin Rock Mesa: "I am the Chairperson of Sovereign Dineh Nation, the organization formed to protect our homes. I give my greetings and would like to be here in person, but I have a long way to travel to be in San Francisco next week, where the final mediation meeting is being held concerning a proposed 75 year lease agreement."

"In 1864, the U.S. Government forcibly removed nearly 10,000 Dineh to the world's first concentration camp at Fort Sumner, New Mexico. As a result of this ethnic cleansing, thousands perished from illnesses brought on by physical and spiritual diseases and malnourishment. Only when the survivors were allowed to return home to Dinétah and rejoin those who avoided removal was health restored to our Nation. 110 years later Congress again brought "war" against our people through the evil known as the Relocation Act. Again nearly 10,000 Dineh were intimidated into leaving their Church and Altar. Many who left have since met with premature deaths. Many more have been devastated by physical and spiritual illnesses.

We who are unalterably opposed to relocation gain our strength by maintaining our traditional religion. We wish harm to no one and don't understand why we've been made to suffer so much for so long. We remember our honored friend and Traditional Hopi Elder, Grandfather David Monongye. He often told why many Traditional Hopi knew it was the Creator's idea for Dineh to live here. He was taught the Dineh were brought to surround the Mesa by the Holy Ones so as to provide a protective buffer from the forces of greed and destruction. If, and when, the Traditional Dineh were removed from these lands, his people would fall in turn, and the Earth would be destroyed. He knew from ancient teachings that Dineh and Hopi were physically and spiritually bound together. He realized, as do the current Resisters to relocation, that if the Dineh Church and Altar can be destroyed, so could everyone else's.

The Hopi and Dineh people do not have a quarrel, but 22 years ago, a group of mining and power companies deceived the U.S. government into thinking there was a range war between us. These mining companies convinced the U.S. government that the solution was to evict everyone who lived in the areas which they wished to mine."

Rachael Chaat says, "I am 13 years old. My grandmother lives in Big Mountain. I was raised with her and I was taught Dineh values. I don't know why the U.S. government is pressuring all the Elders into relocating. You don't know about the hardship that happens out here. All the U.S. government and most of the untraditional Hopis are only interested in mining. My grandmother once said mining is like raping the Earth. In fact it's true, but you wouldn't believe it. Have you ever seen the mining area? How would you like it if someone was mining in your front yard? Everyone don't like the Agreement just as you don't like the Dineh. Why do you cause so much pain and suffering?"

Brenndon Tso says, "I am 9 years old. I was born in a dirt floored hogan in Mosquito Springs. I have nightmares when the Hopi tribe threatens to tear it down. I was

scared when I had to run seven miles to save my grandma's horses from the BIA rangers. They interrupted a ceremony I was participating in. I am a Sun Dancer. I have helped bury my relatives and it makes me sick to my stomach to think of the Hopis having control over this area. My umbilical cord and afterbirth is buried here. These are my places that I am to care for all my life. And it makes me sad because I cannot live with my grandma all the time. I would like to help herd the sheep and take care of the horses every day. But my family was forced out when they tore down a new round house. There was no room for us to stay. We were forced to move off the reservation. That makes me real sad. My parents can't pay their bills. If we could choose to, we would still be living in Mosquito Springs."

Sam Tso, Sovereign Dineh Nation, age 33 says, "What the United Nations should do is cite the U.S. government for human rights violations against the Indian people throughout the North American continent. All Native Americans are aware of this. Where I live we face forced relocation and it makes me feel jittery. But I know that I must face it. Our family line living in the Mosquito Springs area up to Blue Canyon area can be traced back eighteen generations. That puts us far beyond the Spaniards."

The U.S. Congress should be working on ways to return our People and to help heal the wounds it has caused. Instead, the U.S. Congress is getting ready to pass legislation that will seal the fate of the few families remaining on the land. This bill, Senate #1973, is opposed by all the people remaining on the land. This bill tells us we must pay rent to live on the land where our families have lived for hundreds of years, that we must pay grazing fees for the livestock herds with which we survive. It says we must obey the laws of a police state that does not allow us to have visitors, or to be represented in its government. It says we must submit to a foreign government who only wishes to remove us by any means necessary so that they can sell our land to the mining companies. The U.S. Congress intends to pass this law without ever allowing any of our people to appear before it or to testify about what it means.

Katherine A. Smith says, "I am 79 years old. I live here under Big Mountain. My ancestors have always been here from time immemorial. My grandmother and grandparents went to Fort Sumner on the long walk. We have always been here before the Long Walk and afterwards, it has been over a thousand years now. Today, I am still here and my children are here also. Here in Big Mountain we have many prayers that tie us to the land. This place that we call Big Mountain, it is our life. It is not just Big Mountain, we also hold the trees, the dirt from the earth, and even the wind in our prayers. These trees and the plants are our medicine, we live in this environment. The Holy Ones speak to us through these entities, so this is where our prayers lie. The

sheep, the horse, cattle, dogs, goats, and even cats are a part of our daily lives, they exist also in our prayers. We do not have jobs, this is our life. Even the cornfield, this is a big part of our lives. Today, we cannot plant without the Hopi and BIA's complaint. We cannot build a dam for water and we cannot haul wood for fire. The law is something that we do not understand. We do not speak English, we have never gone to school. The BIA impounds our horses, cattle, mules, goats and sheep. They steal them from us. The law P.L. 93531 was passed in 1973 without our knowledge. These laws were passed without our consent or understanding. And our children, even though we were raising them here, we were told they were no longer residents here. They threw our children out like trash.

So, as for me, from where I stand, I believe that the land was stolen. Our livestock are stolen. Even our very being is being stolen, they threaten to throw us off the land. They put fear in our hearts, and this is the way they are killing us. This land that I am sitting on, this earth here, there are many minerals underneath that could bring wealth to people. That is why they crush me with their laws to tell me that I do not belong here. For these reasons, I am resisting. I was born here. Big Mountain is my mother, and that is why I will remain. I cannot just walk away from my mother. She is the one who will decide when it is time for me to return to her, this is when I will leave."

The rights which we request are only the minimum granted to all people under the United Nation's Universal Declaration of Human Rights. We request your support and the support of the United Nations in protecting our right to continue in our traditional way of life.

Thank you

---

---

#### NEWS RELEASE

For Immediate Release August 9, 1996

Please contact Sovereign Dineh Nation

c/o Bobby Castillo, American Indian Movement  
415/386-4373

Dineh (Navajo) Elders and youth, traveling from Big Mountain, and throughout the Black Mesa region of the Navajo Nation will hold a prayer vigil and demonstration beginning 8:30 am, Wednesday, August 14, in front of the U.S. Court of Appeals for Ninth Circuit Court, 121 Spear St., San Francisco. At 12:00 noon, a press conference will be held outside of 450 U.S. Federal Building.

Elders and youth are traveling a distance of two thousand miles, to tell Ninth Circuit Court that they reject the

proposed Accommodation Agreement, 75-year lease being imposed upon them by the Hopi and the U.S. government.

The resisters have been denied legal representation throughout the negotiations. Attorney Lee Phillips, who is paid by the Navajo Nation to "represent" the families, states that he only represents the people that want to sign the Agreement, which has been rejected by ratios of 250:1 within the communities affected by it. He has refused to provide any information regarding the final Mediation hearing in San Francisco to the people whose lives depend on its results.

Even though they are the ones facing another relocation deadline, the families in the Black Mesa communities continue to be denied a voice. They ask why the U.S. government, the U.S. Department of Justice and the Hopi tribe need to hold the final Mediation meeting in San Francisco, behind closed doors?

The proposed lease does not resolve what Congress, including Senator Barry Goldwater, Sr., Sidney Yates, and Senator McCain, have through the years called 'a great mistake' when referring to P.L. 93-531, the Relocation Act. It was passage of this Act in 1974 that prompted the forced relocation of over 10,000 Traditional Dineh from their ancestral homeland to clear the way for mineral resource development by energy companies, including Peabody Coal Company.

Roberta Blackgoat, Chairperson for Sovereign Dineh Nation says, 'The Hopi and Dineh people do not have a quarrel, but 22 years ago, a group of mining and power companies deceived the U.S. government into thinking there was a 'range war' between us. The mining and power companies deceived the U.S. government that the solution was to evict everyone who lived in the areas which they wished to mine. So Congress intervened.' Since 1974, hundreds of millions of dollars has been spent on Relocation, while those who resist have been denied access to safe drinking water, and have been denied home improvement and new home construction for over twenty years, even in cases of demonstrated medical need.

Recently Dineh resisters won a major victory, delaying a vote on S. 973 'The Navajo-Hopi Land Dispute Settlement Act of 1996' one day before Congress went on recess. This bill if passed would have caused the 104th Session of Congress to be remembered the second Session of Congress to commit a travesty of justice against the Dineh people. What the Senate Select Committee on Indian Affairs has called a fair hearing for them is a hearing at a location several thousands of miles from where they live, for which they were given less than five days notice.

Behind closed doors huddle a group of people interested only in money. Outside these doors stand the families whose ancestral homes will become the property of a

hostile government, who will have their means of survival taken away by grating restrictions that deny them the minimum needed to support themselves in the traditional way their families have lived for hundreds of years, and who will subject to the rule of a foreign government which has been promised \$50.2 million dollars by the U.S. government under the Senate bill

#1973, if it can force the people into leaving or signing an Agreement which they do not want.

Isn't it time for the voice of the people to be heard? Human, Civil, Religious and Constitutional-rights violations perpetrated against the Dineh people must cease. Please attend this prayer vigil and press conference.



## Sources of Additional Information

Many of you have asked for a list of books or other information on the Hopi. Here is a list of sources not only on the Hopi but on other topics as well.

### Hopi

---

***Hotevilla – Hopi Shrine of the Covenant – Microcosm of the World* by Thomas E. Mails and Dan Evehema. Copyright © 1995. Marlow & Company, 632 Broadway, Seventh floor, New York, NY 10012**

There is one “must read”. It is *Hotevilla – Hopi Shrine of the Covenant – Microcosm of the World* by Thomas E. Mails and Dan Evehema. It is not perfect. Mails has included a large portion of information on Hopi ancestors that comes from Western anthropologists. Much of this information is misleading, inaccurate or just plain wrong. But the value of the book lies the extensive reprints of statements directly from Hopi Elders. In particular, the book reprints excerpts of 43 of the 45 issues of *Techqua Ikachi* (Land and Life), a newsletter the traditional elders of Hotevilla published clandestinely between 1975 and 1986. These newsletters and the other verbatim quotes from Hopi elders are a rich source of information on Hopi Prophecies and Teachings.

Note that Mails subsequently published on his own a book titled: *The Hopi Survival Kit*. While Hopi traditionals from Hotevilla heartily recommend *Hotevilla*, they do NOT recommend *The Hopi Survival Kit*, which apparently was published without their blessing and which they suggest is not accurate. I have noted several inaccuracies in it myself, but it may still be a worthwhile read for Mails has combed the many *Techqua Ikachi* newsletters and printed all prophecies from them in *The Hopi Survival Kit*. I caution you that much of the interpretation and advice in this book is from Mails himself and differs in important ways from the teachings of the Hopi themselves.

---

***The Book of the Hopi* Copyright © 1963, Frank Waters, Viking Penguin Inc.**

A book which is a rich source of fascinating material on Hopi history and religion is Frank Waters' 1963 book *The Book of the Hopi*. Waters interviewed 30 elders for two years to gather information for this book. However, most of them were from Oraibi, where “progressives” violently drove out “traditionals” in September 1906. The traditionals then founded Hotevilla. The traditional elders of Hotevilla do NOT recommend this book, saying it is not accurate. Two specific criticisms: 1. The account of the driving out of traditionals from Oraibi suggests they were allowed to go back into their homes to gather belongings. The Elders say this is not true. 2. The idea is put forth of a “Blue Star Kachina” who will dance in the plaza as a sign of impending Purification. A Hotevilla traditional I visited in July 1997 discounted this idea, saying that it represents a misunderstanding of the “Blue Star Kachina”. The traditionals don't make a connection between this Kachina and their prophecies for Purification. So, read this book at your own risk!

---

***Pumpkin Seed Point* Copyright © 1969, Frank Waters, Sage/Swallow Press Incorporated**  
***Mountain Dialogues* Copyright © 1981, Frank Waters, Sage/Swallow Press Books, now Ohio University Press**

*Pumpkin Seed Point* is Waters' first-person story of the three years he spent living in Hopiland while he collected information for *The Book of the Hopi*. Anyone who has read *Book of the Hopi* or is interested in Hopi culture will find *Pumpkin Seed Point* absorbing. *Mountain Dialogues*, written later, is my second favorite book by Waters (my favorite being *The Man Who Killed the Deer*). *Dialogues* contains a series of related, provocative essays on humanity's mystical relationships with one another, nature and the sacred. The chapter on Hopi prophecy is perhaps the best single thing I have read on the topic. Much food for thought here.

---

***Truth of a Hopi* Copyright © 1967, Edmund Nequatewa, Northern Arizona Society of Science and Art, available from the Museum of Northern Arizona, Flagstaff. Originally issued in 1936 as Bulletin No. 8**

Absolutely fascinating and historic collection of Hopi Creation and Migration stories, history and other teachings. Includes first hand accounts of 20th Century events such as the taking of Hopi children by US government soldiers, the rift in Oraibi which led to the settlement of Hotevilla and others.

---

*Sun Chief, The Autobiography of a Hopi Indian* Copyright © 1942, Don Talayesva, edited by Leo W. Simmons, Yale University Press

Absorbing and intimate life story told with great courage and humor by a Hopi who was among the "Friendlies" in Oraibi in 1906 when the "Hostiles" were kicked out. Talayesva was sent by Federal Authorities to Sherman School for Indians in Riverside, California. The story of his return to his own culture and the necessary adjustments is particularly touching. I couldn't put this book down.

---

*Pages From Hopi History* Copyright © 1974, Harry C. James, The University of Arizona Press

James has associated with the Hopi for most of this century, and his friends and acquaintances include most of the Hopi who played important roles in the shaping of 20th century Hopi History. Among them was Tewaquaptewa, the Oraibi Kikmongwi who kicked the "Hostiles" out of Oraibi in 1906. James' first book on the Hopi, *Treasure of the Hopitu*, was published in 1927. *Pages From Hopi History* include first hand and other accounts from Hopi History from Creation to the early 1970s. This is a historically important and well-written work I haven't read any of James' other books, which include *Haliksai! Hopi Legends of Grand Canyon Country*, ©1940 and *The Hopi Indians*, ©1956.

---

*Po Pai Mo, The Search for White Buffalo Woman* Copyright © 1983, Robert Boissiere, Sunstone Press

*The Hopi Way, an Odyssey* Copyright ©1985, Robert Boissiere, Sunstone Press

*Meditations With the Hopi* Copyright © 1986, Robert Boissiere, Bear & Company, Inc.

*The Return of Pahana* Copyright © 1990, Robert Boissiere, Bear & Company Publishing

Boissiere was adopted by a Hopi family and became a participant in their cultural life. *Po Pai Mo* tells the fascinating story of his coming to the US from France immediately following World War II and his journey of personal discovery which led to the Hopi Mesas, among other places in Native America. *The Hopi Way* is a great little book with a first hand account of daily life among the Hopi. It tells the poignant story of a Hopi family trying to maintain their traditions in an intrusive modern world. *Meditations With the Hopi* is a fascinating series of interpretations of Hopi thoughts, stories or teachings. I am in no position to judge whether Boissiere accurately represents Hopi philosophies, but I found the book rich and thought-provoking. *The Return of Pahana* is a highly-interpreted view of Hopi Legend and Prophecy that has not to my knowledge been reviewed by any traditional Hopi religious leaders. It does contain something which may be of interest: excerpts from the July, 1955 Federal "Hopi Hearings" in which the commissioner of Indian Affairs Glenn L. Emmons finally agreed to traditional Hopi requests to send a delegation to Hopiland to hear Hopi in every village air their grievances. Boissiere was present and obtained one of the few original transcripts. He reprints excerpts of Hopi records, legends, myths and sacred teachings from the more than 400 page document. There are quotes from Hotevilla traditional elders Dan Katchongva and David Monongye. Boissiere doesn't say where one could find a copy of the transcript, but mentions that shortly after the hearings he obtained a copy at the Phoenix area office of the federal Bureau of Indian Affairs.

---

INTERNET SOURCE:

The single best source of documents and information relating to the Hopi on the Web right now is "The Hopi Information Network" at: <http://www.infomagic.com/~abyte/hopi/>

## Sources of information on other Native Nations

Virtually every Native American Nation has prophecies relating to this great transition we have now entered.

---

*Black Elk Speaks : Being the Life Story of a Holy Man of the Oglala Sioux*, 1988, John G. Neihardt, University of Nebraska Press

The classic co-written autobiography of the great Oglala holy man, first published in 1932. Black Elk's vision is startlingly similar to Revelations in the New Testament, and should be read by anyone with an interest in native American culture, history and prophecy.

---

**Wisdomkeepers. Meetings with Native American Spiritual Elders**, Copyright © 1990, Steve Wall and Harvey Arden, Beyond Words Publishing, Inc.

In-depth stories and teachings from 17 great Native American elders including Thomas Banyacya of Hopi and Leon Shenandoah, Tadodaho Ho-de-no-sau-ne (Chief of Chiefs of The People of the Long House - **Iroquois Confederacy**). Sadly, both elders have passed to Spirit in the past few years, as **have** so many other great Native American Elders.

---

Profiles in **Wisdom**, Native Elders **Speak** about **the** Earth, Copyright © 1991, Steven McFadden, Bear & Company Publishing

Steve was the coordinator for the **1995-1996 Sunbow 5 Walk for the Earth** when I met him. This prayer walk from First Encounter Beach, Cape Cod to Santa Barbara, CA was guided spiritually by Anishnabe elder Grandfather William Commanda, who is one of the elders profiled in this book. (Other elders guiding the walk included **Hopis** Dan Evehema and Martin Gashweseoma.) Other elders profiled in Steve's book include the well-known Mayan Hunbatz Men, Seneca Grandmother **Twylah** Nitsch, Etowa Cherokee Dhyani Ywahoo and Sun Bear. Steve has an intuitive feel for Native teachings and a tremendous store of Native lore and knowledge, making this book particularly interesting.

---

**The Book of Elders, The Life Stories & Wisdom of Great American Indians**, Copyright © 1994, Sandy Johnson, HarperSanFrancisco

Another book containing stories and teachings from 16 elders, including Martin Gashweseoma and Thomas Banyacya of Hopi, Roberta Blackgoat, Dineh, Leon Shenandoah, Tadodaho Ho-de-no-sau-ne, and Arvol Looking Horse, Lakota, who is the carrier of the Sacred Pipe given to the Lakota by White Buffalo Calf Woman.

---

**Touch the Earth, A Self-Portrait of Indian Existence**, Copyright © 1971, Compiled by T.C. McLuhan, A Touchstone Book, Simon & Schuster.

A deeply moving book, containing words spoken by great Native Americans from the 17th century to present, including a letter sent by Hopi traditional elders to President Nixon in 1970 protesting the strip-mining of coal from sacred land. This book contains some of the most touching poetry I have read. A sample: "We love quiet; we suffer the mouse to play; when the woods are rustled by the wind, we fear not." -Indian Chief to the governor of Pennsylvania, 17th.

---

Sacred Path Cards, Copyright © 1990, Jamie Sams, HarperSanFrancisco

A truly wonderful 325 page hardcover book comes with the **Sacred Path Cards: The Discovery of Self Through Native Teachings** by Jamie Sams. Jamie, a Seneca, spent many years studying with elders from her own and other nations. From my own exposure to native teachings, I can say that Jamie's book is an authentic give-away of true native teachings. She does not reveal the details of ceremonies, which would be improper, but does give the essence, of many important teachings. There are **44** cards, each representing a unique teaching, and a chapter explaining each one.

## Prophecy

You undoubtedly have found several books on prophecy. Here are some lesser-known ones I have found of particular interest:

---

**Black Dawn, Bright Day**, Copyright © 1992, Sun Bear with Wabun Wind, A Fireside Book, Simon & Schuster

A book which recounts prophecies of several native nations is **Black Dawn, Bright Day**, by Sun Bear (with Wabun Wind). Sun Bear, a Chippewa man who passed to the Spirit World a couple years ago, was a colorful and sometimes controversial figure. He led the formation of a community of all colors of people in Washington State called "The Bear Tribe", and wrote (or co-wrote) several books intended primarily for a non-native audience. This book gives interesting details and perspectives on several different native prophecies. Much of his book gives practical suggestions for physical preparations to **deal** with the coming times. Hopi elders ridicule this idea, suggesting there will be only spiritual shelters in the coming times. In other words, take care of your relationship with Creator. Everything else flows from that.

---

**The Millennium Book of Prophecy, 1997**, John Hogue, Harper Collins, San Francisco

Contains “Visions and Predictions from Nostradamus, Edgar Cayce, Gurdjieff, Tamo-san, Madame Blavatsky, the Old and New Testament Prophets and 89 others.” A nearly indispensable source of hundreds of prophecies. The design, layout and typography of the original 1994 edition is so incredibly horrendous – high tech/MTV/Information Age – as to make it virtually unreadable. Make certain you avoid that edition. Fortunately the 1997 edition is greatly improved.

---

When the **Comet Runs**, Copyright © 1997, Tom Kay, Hampton Roads Publishing Company, Inc.

Anyone who begins to write a book about a comet a full year before the comet is “discovered” certainly has my attention! I highly recommend Tom’s book. He covers many excellent prophetic sources of which I was not aware, and does an excellent job relating them to each other.

---

**The End Times, Prophecies of Coming Changes**, Copyright © 1994, John Van Auken, A.R.E. Press

John was an executive director of the A.R.E. and is an expert on ancient Egypt. This book looks at prophecies from the Bible, Edgar Cayce, Nostradamus and the Holy Mother as she has appeared in visions over the years. For me, John’s work has a great deal of credibility and scholarship, and he makes important connections between the prophecies of the different sources.

---

**Notes From the Cosmos**, Copyright 6 1997, Gordon-Michael Scallion, Matrix Institute, ISBN 0-9619709-0-1

Gordon-Michael Scallion is perhaps the most well-known contemporary non-native seer. His Earth Changes Report newsletter has been published since 1991, and he has made numerous public appearances. Scallion is not a prophet, in that not 100 percent of what he predicts actually happens. He has hit many events right on, however, including Landers, Big Bear and Northridge quakes of Southern California, the Kobe quake of 1995, and Hurricane Andrew. He also accurately predicted the enormous El Niño of 1997-98, and in giving the cause, stated what I had been feeling strongly in my heart: that the heating of so much water (the Pacific ocean!!) would take a geologic event. Scallion said the cause was the great movement of magma under the sea floor.

But Scallion has missed as many as he has hit. Why? Well it could be for a couple reasons. First, he might just simply have not “seen” correctly. But second, he could have seen something that in TRUE time (not linear) actually DID happen. But because what happens is in large part determined by humanity’s choices, if humanity changes (grows spiritually), the choices may change and therefore the outcome also. If this is the case with Scallion, then his accuracy should be better the closer he gets to an event, and in fact this seems to be the case. A true prophet sees the changes in humanity, and the distance in time makes no difference, but true prophets are few and far between.

Notes From the Cosmos contains the story of the awakening of Scallion’s gift and a great number of the things he has seen.

---

**The Bible Code**, Copyright ©1997, Michael Drosnin, Simon & Schuster and,

**Cracking the Bible Code: The real story of the stunning discovery of hidden knowledge in the first five books of the Bible**, Copyright © 1997, Jeffrey Satinover, M.D., William Morrow & Co. Inc.

Both books document the stunning discovery of a code in the Torah, the Hebrew version of the first five books of the Bible. Many people appear either to be unaware of or disbelieve in what could be the most important discovery of the last 10,000 years. I find this very strange. The existence of the code has been proven by the most highly respected statisticians and mathematicians in the Western world, who published their findings in the August 1994 issue of Statistical Science, a respected US journal. Scientists who have attempted to expose the findings as a fluke have instead uncovered more corroborating evidence. This is the real thing, folks.

Events reflected in the Bible Code include the assassinations of the Kennedy brothers, Anwar Sadat and, Yitzak Rabin, the election of Netanyahu, the collision of comet Shoemaker-Levy with Jupiter, and many, many more events of the past 3000 years.

The first book released, **The Bible Code**, is a less-conservative, outsiders view of the discovery of the code among Israeli scientists. Based on his shocking finding of an apparent prediction of Rabin’s assassination, Drosnin sent a letter warning the Israeli Prime Minister before he was assassinated. Rabin apparently didn’t take the warning seriously. The second book, **Cracking the Bible Code**, is more detailed and represents an insiders look at the fascinating story of the discovery and application of this code. Satinover, who represents the “party line” of Israeli scientists on the code, is conservative to a fault. For example, he makes the tenuous assertion that the code can’t be used to predict the future, yet he presents codes which connect the name “Sadat” with: “the conspiracy”, “to assassinate”, “Sadat”, “a parade”, “on

the 8th of Tishri" (the correct date of the assassination in the Hebrew calendar), "1981" (the year of the assassination), "Chaled" (the assassin's first name) and "Islambooli" (the correct spelling of the assassin's last name). Satinover points out that even that day's New York Times had it wrong, reporting the name as "Istanbooli"! As to the idea the code can't predict the future, well, wasn't Sadat's Egypt in Moses' future???

---

INTERNET SOURCE:

The best overall internet source I've found is Morgana's Observatory. It contains scores of documents on native and non-native prophecies, material on ancient mysteries, and other good stuff. I have spent hours exploring this site and still haven't reached bottom. You'll find it at: <http://www.dreamscape.com/morgana/index.htm>

---

## Evidence of Ancient Technological Civilizations

---

*Fingerprints of the Gods*, Copyright © 1995, Graham Hancock, Crown Trade Paperbacks

Contains a wide variety of strong evidence for ancient, technologically advanced civilizations. Unfortunately many of Graham's conclusions differ from what the Hopi tell us. For me, Hopi history has more credibility. Nonetheless, Graham presents an abundance of fascinating and compelling evidence for the Hopi Third World.

---

*The Message of the Sphinx*, Copyright © 1996, Graham Hancock and Robert Bauval, Three Rivers Press

This book presents the recent findings of the tribe of "Amateur Egyptologists" who have made significant discoveries in Egypt lately. This includes John Anthony West, who, with Geologist Robert Schoch established that the weathering patterns on the Sphinx were caused by heavy precipitation, something Giza has not seen for at least 7,000 years, and probably more like 12,000. Of course this completely upsets current "Egyptologists" story of the development of the monuments on the Giza plateau. The book also recaps findings from Bauval's earlier book, *The Orion Mystery*, in which Bauval shares the important discovery that the pyramids of Giza are laid out according to the alignment of stars important to ancient Egyptian religion. Bauval presents the information that the alignment is exact only for one time in history: 10,500 BC, which is the exact date given by Edgar Cayce for the construction of the Sphinx and pyramids. In *The Message of the Sphinx* the authors present their theories regarding the development of the monuments of the Giza plateau as relating to an area in the sky known as the "duat". The entire complex is shown to be a model for human history on Earth and in the Heavens, and suggests that the "Hall of Records" spoken of by Cayce is buried roughly 100 feet under the Sphinx. A fascinating read. Hancock's collaboration with Bauval has resulted in a very solid work.

---

*Atlantis, The Eighth Continent*, Copyright © 1984, Charles Berlitz

There are many good sources of information about Atlantis, including the extraordinary information given by Edgar Cayce and the scholarly 1882 classic, *Atlantis: Myths of the Antediluvian World* by Ignatius Donnelly. But my current favorite is this one by Charles Berlitz, which is written in an engaging style and which brings together a great deal of fascinating and compelling evidence.

## Edgar Cayce

Edgar Cayce, 1877-1945, was perhaps the best-documented psychic of all time. I was introduced to his work by a fellow *Sunbow* 5 walker, and was astounded by what I read: the information given by Mr. Cayce while in a hypnotic state agrees very remarkably with the information given by the Hopi themselves. The story of this humble person and his extraordinary life's work are well worth investigating. I have found no inconsistencies between the teachings of the Hopi, Edgar Cayce or Christ. They all tell us the same thing, albeit in different ways.

There are literally hundreds of books on various of the more than 10,000 topics touched on in the more than 14,000 documented Edgar Cayce Readings. Here are a few of my favorites:

---

*THE EDGAR CAYCE COMPANION, a Comprehensive Treatise of the Edgar Cayce Readings* Copyright © 1995, B. Ernest Frejer, A.R.E. Press. ISBN 0-87604-357-0 (pbk)

The best overview source of verbatim quotes by Cayce, containing extracts from the readings on 264 topics.

---

*There is a River*, Copyright 6 1942, Thomas Sugrue, Holt, Rinehart & Winston, and, Edgar Cayce, the *Sleeping Prophet*, Copyright 61967, Jess Stearn, Doubleday & Co.

Sugrue was Cayce's biographer who received guidance on the book directly from Cayce himself. His book is more of a biography of Cayce, though the Philosophy section is considered a classic, having been informed by specific readings.

Stearn's book also contains biographical information, but presents more of an overview of the material from the readings.

## Other Interesting Titles

---

*CATACLYSM! Compelling evidence of a cosmic catastrophe in 9500 BC* ISBN 1-879181-42-8 (pbk) D.S. Allan & J.B. Delair, Copyright © 1997, Bear & Co., Santa Fe. Note: this originally was published in 1995 under the title: *When the Earth Nearly Died* by Gateway Books, Bath, UK.

This presents overwhelming evidence for a global flood. The authors compile a staggering collection of scientific data from geologists, paleo-zoologists, paleo-botanists, oceanographers, archeologists and anthropologists to conclusively demonstrate that the flood spoken of in the Bible and in stories from more than 500 cultures world-wide is not myth, as many believe, but provable fact. The book is heavy reading with extensive notations (over 1500 in all) but presents a very convincing, perhaps indisputable picture. It isn't perfect, of course. Despite the common assertion by many ancient traditions that there have been a series of destructions of the Earth spread over tens of thousands of years, Allan & Delair tend to lump together all the evidence and suggest that there was one "Big One" approximately 11,500 years ago. Nonetheless, for the richness of data alone, this one is worth taking a look at.

---

*Many Lives, Many Masters*, Copyright © 1988, Brian L. Weiss, M.D., A Fireside Book, Simon & Schuster

My favorite book on reincarnation. This one is a quick, easy and fun read. It tells the true story of "a prominent psychiatrist, his young patient, and the past-life therapy that changed both their lives."

---

*Saved by the Light*, 1995, **Dannion** Brinkley, Harper Mass Market Paperbacks

There are many books available now which were written by people who have had "Near Death Experiences" (NDEs). Their often highly credible accounts are consistent, and support many of the spiritual teachings available on the afterlife, such as those of the Tibetans. Dannion Brinkley's gripping account is by far my favorite out of the 8 or so that I've read. His personal story is moving beyond words. In 1975 he was struck by lightning, and doctors could not revive him. His body was dead for 28 minutes. In fact when he returned to his body, it was in the hallway covered by a sheet, where it was to be taken to the morgue. While in the light, Brinkley was shown 117 specific visions of events to come, including the accident at Chernobyl. By 1993, 95 of these events have taken place.

You may do as I did, and rush right out to get Brinkley's second book, *At Peace in the Light*, which recounts the extraordinarily heightened powers of perception he has developed as a result of his NDE.

---

*Peace Pilgrim, Her Life and Work in Her Own Words*, Copyright © 1982, 1991, Peace Pilgrim, An Ocean Tree Book, ISBN 0-943734-20-7 (hardcover) or 0-943734-01-0 (pbk)

A contemporary saint, Peace Pilgrim began her walking pilgrimage in 1953. By 1964, she had walked over 25,000 miles, crossing the U.S. several times in her quest for peace among nations, between people and the most important inner peace. Her teachings are among the most beautiful, lucid and powerful I have encountered.